

Workshop Manual Audi A6 2011 ➤ Audi A6 China 2012 ➤ Audi A7 Sportback 2011 ➤

6-cylinder direct injection engine (2.5 ltr., 2.8 ltr. 4-valve)

Engine ID CHV CNY CNY CLXA CLXB CVP A

Edition 11.2017



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

## Repair Group

- 00 Technical data
- 10 Removing and installing engine
- 13 Crankshaft group
- 15 Cylinder head, valve gear
- 17 Lubrication
- 19 Cooling
- 24 Mixture preparation injection
- 26 Exhaust system
- 28 Ignition system



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.

No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.



# Contents

00 -	Techr	nical data	1
	1	Identification	•
	1.1	Engine identification number/engine data	•
	2	Safety precautions	3
	2.1	Safety precautions when working on the fuel supply system	3
	2.2	Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system	4
	2.3	Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test	Ę
	2.4	Safety precautions when working on the subframe	Ę
	2.5	Safety precautions when working on the cooling system	Ę
	2.6	Safety precautions when working on the ignition system	6
	3	Repair instructions	-
	3.1	Rules for cleanliness	-
	3.2	Foreign particles in engine	-
	3.3	Contact corrosion	-
	3.4	Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring	8
	3.5	Installing radiators and condensers	8
	3.6	Checking vacuum system	8
10 -	Remo	oving and installing engine	ξ
	1	Removing and installing engine	ç
	1.1	Removing engine	ç
	1.2	Separating engine and gearbox	26
	1.3	Securing engine to engine and gearbox support	4
	1.4	Installing engine	45
	2		52
	2.1	Exploded view - assembly mountings	52
	2.2	Removing and installing engine mountings	55
	2.3		6
	3		64
	3.1		64
13 -	Crank	shaft groupshaft group	65
	1		6
	1.1	Exploded view - poly Nebelt drive right, Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not	65
	1.2	and the development of the development of the ALIDIAO ALIDIAO development of the second of the ALIDIAO	66
	1.3	Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt	68
	1.4	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	68
	1.5	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	68
	2	Cylinder block (gearbox end)	73
	2.1	Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end)	73
	2.2	Removing and installing drive plate	74
	2.3	Removing and installing sender wheel	75
	2.4		76
	2.5	Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)	77
	2.6	,,	79
	3	Crankshaft	8
	3.1		8,
	3.1	Crankshaft dimensions	85
	3.3	Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft	85
	3.4	Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft	88
		•	
	4	Balance shaft	87
	4.1	Exploded view - balance shaft	87

	4.2	Removing and installing balance shaft	87
	5	Pistons and conrods	
	5.1	Exploded view - pistons and conrods	
	5.2	Removing and installing pistons	
	5.3	Checking pistons and cylinder bores	
	5.4	Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings	94
15 -	Cylind	der head, valve gear	
	1	Timing chain cover	
	1.1	Exploded view - timing chain cover	
	1.2	Removing and installing timing chain cover	
	2	Chain drive	
	2.1	Exploded view - camshaft timing chains	
	2.2	Exploded view - drive chain for valve gear	
	2.3 2.4	Exploded view - drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump	
	2.4	Removing and installing camshaft timing chain	
	2.6	Removing and installing drive chain for valve gear	
	2.7	Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump	
	3	Cylinder head	
	3.1	Exploded view - cylinder head	
	3.2	Removing and installing cylinder head Protected by copyright. Copyring for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no	
	3.3	Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no Removing and installing cylinder head cover the cover accept any liability.	161
	3.4	Checking compression with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.	162
	4	Valve gear	
	4.1	Exploded view - valve gear	
	4.2	Measuring axial clearance of camshaft	
	4.3	Measuring radial clearance of camshaft	
	4.4	Removing and installing camshaft	170
	4.5	Removing and installing cam actuators	
	4.6	Removing and installing camshaft control valves	
	4.7	Checking hydraulic compensation elements	
	4.8	Removing and installing valve stem oil seals	
	5	Inlet and exhaust valves	
	5.1	Checking valve guides	
	5.2	Checking valves	
	5.3	Valve dimensions	191
17 -	Lubrio	cation	193
	1	Sump/oil pump	
	1.1	Exploded view - sump/oil pump	
	1.2	Engine oil	
	1.3	Removing and installing sump (bottom section)	
	1.4	Removing and installing sump (top section)	
	1.5 1.6	Removing and installing oil pump	
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	2 2.1	Engine oil cooler	
	3	Crankcase breather	205
	3.1	Exploded view - crankcase breather system	
	3.2	Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses	
	3.3	Removing and installing oil separator	
	4	Oil filter/oil pressure switches	
	4.1	Exploded view - oil filter housing/oil pressure switches	208



	4.2	Removing and installing oil pressure switch F22	
	4.3	Removing and installing oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure F378	
	4.4	Checking oil pressure	
	4.5	Removing and installing oil filter housing	
	4.6	Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428	214
19 -	Cooli	ng	
	1	Cooling system/coolant	
	1.1	Connection diagram - coolant hoses	216
	1.2	Checking cooling system for leaks	
	1.3	Draining and filling cooling system	221
	2	Coolant pump/thermostat assembly	228
	2.1	Exploded view - coolant pump/thermostat	228
	2.2	Exploded view - electric coolant pump	229
	2.3	Removing and installing electric coolant pump	229
	2.4	Removing and installing coolant pump	231
	2.5	Removing and installing thermostat	232
	2.6	Removing and installing coolant temperature sender G62	233
	2.7	Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694	234
	2.8	Removing and installing coolant valves	235
	3	Coolant pipes	236
	3.1	Exploded view - coolant pipes	
	3.2	Removing and installing coolant pipes	
	4	Radiator/radiator fans	
	4.1	Exploded view - radiator/radiator fans	
	4.2	Removing and installing radiator	
	4.3	Removing and installing radiator cowl	
	4.4	Removing and installing radiator fan V7	
	4.5	Removing and installing radiator fan control unit J293	
24		re preparation - injection	
24 -	wixtu		
	1	Injection system	
	1.1	Overview of fitting locations - injection system	
	1.2	Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section	
	1.3	Checking fuel system for leaks	
	2	Air cleaner	
	2.1	Exploded view - air cleaner housing	
	2.2	Removing and installing air cleaner housing	
	3	Intake manifold	287
	3.1	Exploded view - intake manifold	287
	3.2	Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail	291
	3.3	Removing and installing intake manifold. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not	292
	3.4	Removing and installing intake manifold (top section) AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)	294
		with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Convigint by AUDI AG	
	3.5	Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)	296
	3.5 3.6	Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)	
		Removing and installing throttle valve module J338	298
	3.6		298 299
	3.6 4	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338	298 299 299
	3.6 4 4.1	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors	298 299 299 300
	3.6 4 4.1 4.2 4.3	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors  Removing and installing fuel rail  Removing and installing injectors	298 299 300 301
	3.6 4 4.1 4.2 4.3 5	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors  Removing and installing fuel rail  Removing and installing injectors  Senders and sensors	298 299 300 301 311
	3.6 4 4.1 4.2 4.3 5 5.1	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors  Removing and installing fuel rail  Removing and installing injectors  Senders and sensors  Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247	298 299 300 301 311 311
	3.6 4 4.1 4.2 4.3 5 5.1 6	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors  Removing and installing fuel rail  Removing and installing injectors  Senders and sensors  Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247  High-pressure pump	298 299 300 301 311 312
	3.6 4 4.1 4.2 4.3 5 5.1	Removing and installing throttle valve module J338  Injectors  Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors  Removing and installing fuel rail  Removing and installing injectors  Senders and sensors  Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247	298 299 300 301 311 312 312

	6.3	Removing and installing high-pressure pipe	317
	7	Lambda probes	
	, 7.1	Exploded view - Lambda probes	
	7.2	Removing and installing Lambda probe	
	8	Engine control unit	
	8.1	Wiring and component check	
	8.2	Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623	
	0.2	Temoving and installing engine/motor control unit 5020	330
26 -	Exhau	ust system	333
	1	Exhaust pipes/silencers	333
	1.1	Exploded view - silencers	333
	1.2	Separating exhaust pipes/silencers	336
	1.3	Removing and installing front silencer	338
	1.4	Stress-free alignment of exhaust system	339
	1.5	Checking exhaust system for leaks	
	2	Emission control system	341
	2.1	Removing and installing catalytic converters	341
	3	Secondary air system	352
	3.1	Exploded view - secondary air system	352
	3.2	Removing and installing secondary air pump motor V101	353
	3.3	Checking combination valve for secondary air system	355
	3.4	Removing and installing combination valve	358
	4	Exhaust manifolds	362
	4.1	Exploded view - exhaust manifolds	362
	4.2	Removing and installing exhaust manifolds	363
၁၀	Ignitio	Protected by convigate Conving for private or commercial numbers in ne	<b>9</b> ∩7i1 whole is no
20 -		on system  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or	r accept any liabili
	1	Ignition system with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig	
	1.1	Exploded view - ignition system	
	1.2 1.3	Test data, spark plugs	
	1.3	Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages	
	1.5	Removing and installing knock sensor	
	1.6	Removing and installing engine speed sender G28	
	1.0	Nonovina ana malamina chame abeca achaci Gzo	JU I



#### Technical data 00 –

## Identification

(ARL005489; Edition 11.2017)

⇒ "1.1 Engine identification number/engine data", page 1

## 1.1 Engine identification number/engine da-

Engine number



Note

The engine cover panel (front) must be removed to make the engine number visible.

- ◆ The engine number ("engine code" and "serial number") can be found on the front of the cylinder block beneath the cylinder head (right-side) -arrow-.
- Engine codes starting with the letter "C" have four letters (previously three letters).
- The first 3 characters of the engine code stand for the engine capacity and the mechanical construction and design. They are stamped onto the cylinder block together with the serial number.
- ♦ The 4th character indicates the power output and torque of the engine and is determined by the engine control unit.

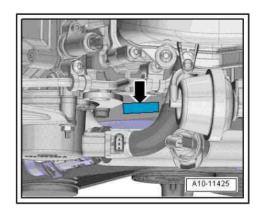


Note

- The four-letter engine code is found on the type plate (certain countries only), vehicle data sticker and engine control unit.
- Fitting locations of the type plate (certain countries only) and the vehicle data sticker ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411.

## Engine data

Code letters		CHVA	CLXA	CLXB
Capacity Itr.		2.773	2.498	2.498
Power out- put	kW at rpm	150/5750 6800	140/5500	150/5500
Torque	Nm at rpm	280/3250 5000	250/3250 4750	250/3250 4750
Bore	$\varnothing$ in mm	84.5	80.2	80.2
Stroke	mm	82.4	82.4	82.4
Compression ratio		12.0	12.3	12.3
RON at least		95 <sup>1)</sup>	95 <sup>1)</sup>	95 <sup>1)</sup>
Injection/ignition system		Simos	Simos	Simos
otested by copyright. Copying for private		or commercial pusces in part or in w AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept	hole, is not 1-4-3-6-2-5	1-4-3-6-2-5
Exhaust gas recirculation		ation in this docunnot. Copyright by AU	DI AG. no	no
Turbocharging/super- charging		no	no	no
Knock control		2 sensors	2 sensors	2 sensors
Charge air cooling		no	no	no



Code letters	CHVA	CLXA	CLXB	
Lambda control	2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	
Variable valve timing	Inlet Exhaust	Inlet Exhaust	Inlet Exhaust	
Intake manifold change- over	yes	yes	yes	
Secondary air system	yes	yes	yes	
Valves per cylinder	4	4	4	

<sup>1)</sup> Unleaded regular grade petrol (RON 91) can also be used, but this will result in a loss of power

Code letters		CNYA	CNYB	CVPA	
Capacity Itr.		2.773	2.773	2.773	
Power out- kW at rpm		150/5750 6800	162/5750 6800	162/5750 6800	
Torque Nm at rpm		280/3250 5000	280/3250 5000	280/3250 5000	
Bore	$\emptyset$ in mm	84.5	84.5	84.5	
Stroke	mm	82.4	82.4	82.4	
Compression	ratio	12.0	12.0	12.0	
RON	at least	95 <sup>1)</sup>	95 <sup>1)</sup>	95 <sup>1)</sup>	
Injection/ignit	ion system	Simos	Simos	Simos	
Firing order		1-4-3-6-2-5	1-4-3-6-2-5	1-4-3-6-2-5	
Exhaust gas recirculation		no	no	no	
Turbocharging/super- charging		no	no	no	
Knock contro	l	2 sensors	2 sensors	2 sensors	
Charge air co	ooling	no	no	no	
Lambda control		2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	2 probes before catalytic converter 2 probes after catalytic converter	
Variable valve timing		Inlet Exhaust	Inlet Exhaust	Inlet Exhaust	
Intake manifold change- over		yes	yes	yes	
Secondary ai	ir system	yes	yes	yes	
Valves per cylinder		4	4	4	
41					

<sup>1)</sup> Unleaded regular grade petrol (RON 91) can also be used, but this will result in a loss of power

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### 2 Safety precautions

- ⇒ "2.1 Safety precautions when working on the fuel supply system", page 3
- ⇒ "2.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/ stop system", page 4
- ⇒ "2.3 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test", page 5
- ⇒ "2.4 Safety precautions when working on the subframe",

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- ⇒ "2.5 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system" https://doi.org/10.1001/j.com/system page 5
- ⇒ "2.6 Safety precautions when working on the ignition system", page 6

#### 2.1 Safety precautions when working on the fuel supply system

Please note the following warnings when working on the fuel supply system:



#### WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system; for the correct procedure see ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282 .
- Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.

Observe the following to prevent injuries to persons and damage to the injection and ignition system:

- Always switch off the ignition before connecting or disconnecting electrical wiring for the injection or ignition system or tester cables.
- Always switch off ignition before washing engine.
- Erase any entries in event memory resulting from testing or installation:
- Vehicle diagnostic tester must be connected.
- Selecting operating mode.
- Using Go To button and "Function/component selection" function, select the following in succession from tree:
- Drive train
- 01 Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- Simos injection and ignition system
- Functions
- Readiness code





#### Caution

To prevent irreparable damage to the electronic components when disconnecting the battery:

- Observe notes on procedure for disconnecting the battery.
- Always switch off the ignition before disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



## WARNING

Escaping fuel can cause a risk.

- The power supply for the fuel system pressurisation pump - G6- must be disconnected before opening the fuel system, since -G6- will be activated briefly when the driver's door is opened with the battery still connected.
- Disconnect power supply by removing fuse for fuel pump control unit - J538- /fuel delivery unit ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations, or disconnect battery.

#### 2.2 Safety precautions when working on vehicles with start/stop system

When performing repairs on vehicles with start/stop system, note the following:



#### WARNING

Risk of injury due to automatic engine start on vehicles with start/stop system.

- On vehicles with activated start/stop system (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically if it needs to.
- Therefore it is important to ensure that the start/stop system is deactivated when performing repairs (switch off ignition, if required switch on ignition again).

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### 2.3 Safety precautions when using testers and measuring instruments during a road test

Note the following if testers and measuring instruments have to be used during a road test:



#### WARNING

Accidents can be caused if the driver is distracted by test equipment while road-testing, or if test equipment is not properly secured.

Persons sitting in the front passenger's seat could be injured if the airbag is triggered in an accident.

- The use of test equipment while driving causes distraction.
- There is an increased risk of injury if test equipment is not secured.
- ◆ Test equipment must always be secured on the rear seat with a strap and operated from the rear seat by a second person ect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

#### 2.4 Safety precautions when working on the subframe

When working on the subframe note the following warnings:



#### Caution

Risk of damage to running gear components.

- ◆ The vehicle must NOT be lowered onto its wheels if the engine/gearbox mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly installed.
- The vehicle must NOT be supported by applying a trolley jack or similar to the subframe or subframe cross brace.

#### 2.5 Safety precautions when working on the cooling system

When working on the cooling system note the following warnings:



#### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot.
- To allow pressure to dissipate, cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with cloth and open carefully.





#### Caution

Overheating can occur if the filler cap is not fitted properly.

The filler cap must engage positively and audibly when it is closed.

#### 2.6 Safety precautions when working on the ignition system

To prevent injuries to persons and/or irreparable damage to the fuel injection and ignition system, the following must be noted:

- Persons wearing a cardiac pacemaker must at all times maintain a safe distance from high-voltage components such as the ignition system and xenon headlights.
- Always switch off the ignition before connecting or disconnecting electrical wiring for the injection or ignition system or tester cables.
- Always switch off the ignition before cleaning the engine.
- Always switch off the ignition before connecting or disconnecting the battery, otherwise the engine control unit may be damaged.
- ♦ If you want to turn over the engine at cranking speed without Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not actually starting it (e.g. compression test), first unplug the conduttorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability nectors from the ignition coils. In addition, remove fuser forefuel he correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. pump control unit - J538-; for identification of fuses refer to ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Erase any entries in event memory resulting from testing or installation:
- Vehicle diagnostic tester must be connected.
- Selecting operating mode.
- Using Go To button and "Function/component selection" function, select the following in succession from tree:
- Drive train
- 01 Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- Simos injection and ignition system
- **Functions**
- Readiness code



#### Caution

To prevent irreparable damage to the electronic components when disconnecting the battery:

- Observe notes on procedure for disconnecting the battery.
- Always switch off the ignition before disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### 3 Repair instructions

- ⇒ "3.1 Rules for cleanliness", page 7
- ⇒ "3.2 Foreign particles in engine", page 7
- ⇒ "3.3 Contact corrosion", page 7
- .4 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring", page
- ⇒ "3.5 Installing radiators and condensers"
- ⇒ "3.6 Checking vacuum system", page 8

#### 3.1 Rules for cleanliness

Even small quantities of dirt can lead to defects. For this reason, please observe the following rules when working on the fuel supply system and injection system:

- Clean connections and surrounding area thoroughly with engine cleaner or brake cleaner and dry cleaned area before loosening.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Immediately seal open lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plugs or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plug or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plug or accept any liability for example from lines and connections with clean plug or accept any lines are accept any lines and connections with lines and connections with lines are accept any lines and connections with lines are accept any lines and connections with lines are accept any lin for example from engine bung set - VAS 6122- .
- After removal, place parts on a clean surface and cover them. Only use lint-free cloths.
- Carefully cover or seal open components if repairs cannot be carried out immediately.
- Only install clean components; replacement parts should only be unpacked immediately prior to installation. Do not use parts that have been previously unpacked and stored away loose (e.g. in toolboxes, etc.).
- Do not work with compressed air when the system is open. If possible, do not move vehicle.
- Make sure that no fuel runs onto the fuel hoses. Should this occur, the fuel hoses must be cleaned again immediately.
- Protect unplugged electrical connectors against dirt and moisture and make sure connections are dry when attaching.

#### 3.2 Foreign particles in engine

- When performing assembly work on the engine, all open passages in the intake and exhaust systems must be sealed with suitable plugs (e.g. from engine bung set - VAS 6122- ) to prevent foreign particles from entering the engine.
- In the event of mechanical damage to one of the cylinder banks, the intake and exhaust systems and combustion chambers of the opposite cylinder bank must always be examined for foreign particles to prevent further damage occurring later.

#### 3.3 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners are used (e.g. bolts, nuts, washers, etc.).

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

Additionally, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Always install new parts if you are not sure whether used parts can be re-fitted ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.



#### Please note:

- We recommend using only genuine replacement parts; these have been tested and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend the use of Audi accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by warranty.

#### 3.4 Routing and attachment of pipes, hoses and wiring

- Mark fuel lines, hydraulic lines, vacuum lines, lines for activated charcoal filter and electrical wiring etc. before removal so they can be re-installed in the original positions and correctly connected. Make sketches or take photographs if necessary Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
- rised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability To avoid damaging pipes, hoses and wiring, ensure sufficient rectness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. clearance from all moving or hot components in engine compartment (limited space in engine compartment).

#### 3.5 Installing radiators and condensers

Even when the radiator and condenser are correctly installed, slight impressions may be visible on the fins of these components. This does not mean that the components are damaged. If the fins are only very slightly distorted, this does not justify renewal of the radiator or the condenser.

#### 3.6 Checking vacuum system

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213-



#### Procedure

- Check all vacuum lines in the complete vacuum system for:
- Cracks
- Traces of animal bites
- Kinked or crushed lines
- Porous or leaking lines
- Check vacuum line to solenoid valve and from solenoid valve to corresponding component.
- If an entry is stored in the event memory, check the vacuum lines leading to the corresponding component and also check the other vacuum lines leading to other components.
- If it is not possible to build up a vacuum with the hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213- or if the vacuum pressure drops again immediately, check the hand vacuum pump and connecting hoses for leaks.



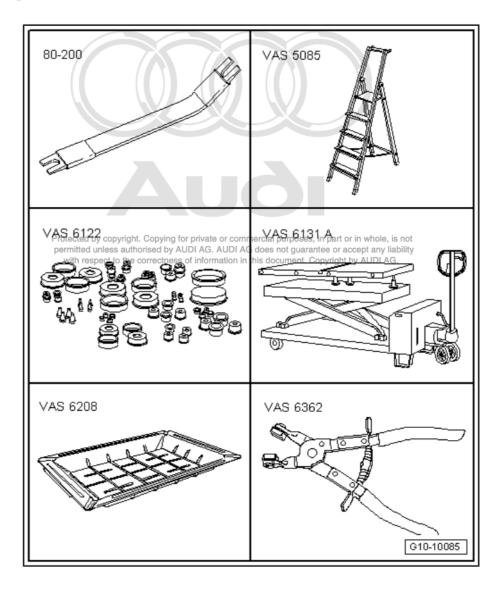
#### Removing and installing engine 10 –

# Removing and installing engine

- ⇒ "1.1 Removing engine", page 9
- ⇒ "1.2 Separating engine and gearbox", page 26
- ⇒ "1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support",
- ⇒ "1.4 Installing engine", page 45

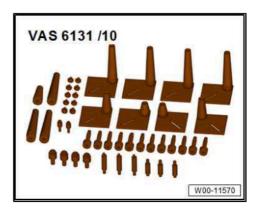
#### 1.1 Removing engine

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- ♦ Removal lever 80 200-
- ♦ Stepladder VAS 5085-
- ♦ Engine bung set VAS 6122-
- ♦ Scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B-
- Drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208-
- ♦ Hose clip pliers VAS 6362-

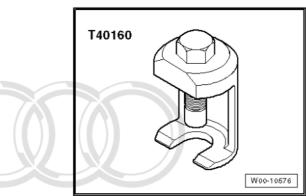
♦ Support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-



- ◆ Supplementary set -VAS 6131/11-
- ♦ Supplementary set, Audi Q7 >2005 VAS 6131/13-



◆ Puller - T40160- for vehicles with manual gearbox



#### Procedure



Note

- ♦ The engine is removed from under measure of the convincion private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not gearbox and subframe (with lock carrier installed) mess of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- ♦ Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.





#### WARNING

Make sure the vehicle cannot tip over when the engine is removed.

Secure the vehicle, to do so, the luggage compartment must be empty.

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system.
- Reduce fuel pressure in high-pressure system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page
- Bring front wheels into straight-ahead position.



#### Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to electronic components.

- Observe notes on procedure for disconnecting the battery.
- Disconnect earth wire from battery terminal ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Discharge refrigerant system ⇒ Air conditioner with refrigerant R134a.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Remove lock carrier cover 
General body repairs exterior by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

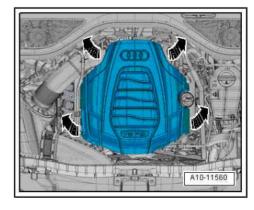
Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachiness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. ments.

#### Vehicles with four-wheel drive:

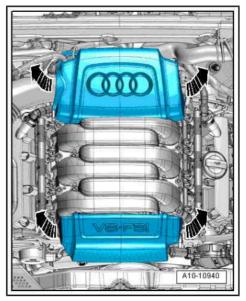
Remove propshaft ⇒ Rear final drive; Rep. gr. 39; Propshaft; Removing and installing propshaft.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Remove engine cover panel:
- Pull off cover panel (one-piece version) -arrows-.



 Pull off both sections of cover panel (two-piece version) -arrows-.



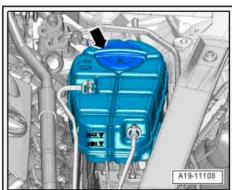


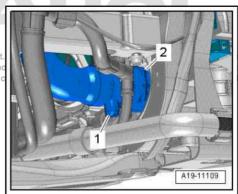
#### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot.
- To allow pressure to dissipate, cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with cloth and open carefully.
- Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.
- Remove both front wheels ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44; Wheels, tyres.
- Remove wheel housing liners (front left and front right) ⇒
  General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing
  liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front).
- Remove wheel spoilers (front) on both sides ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front).
- Remove noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath engine.
- Remove drain plug -1- and drain off coolant.
- Lift retaining clip -2- and disconnect coolant hose from radialess autitor.

Protected by copyrig





ole, is not .ny liability DI AG.



Vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5:

Release hose clip -1-, disconnect coolant hose from coolant pipe (bottom left) and drain off coolant.

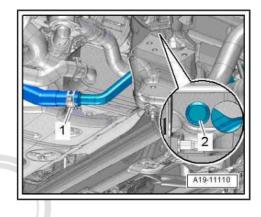


## Note

- Disregard -item 2-.
- The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.

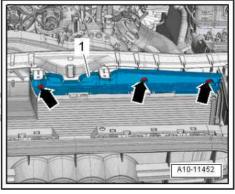
#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

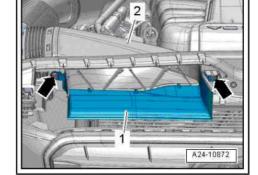


Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.

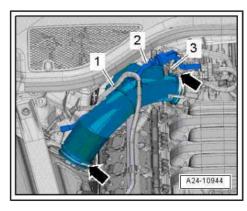


## Note

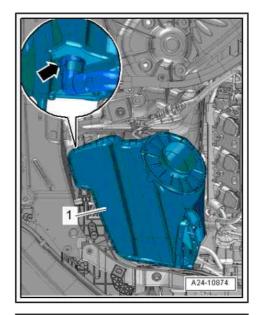
Disregard -item 2-.



- Move fuel hose -1- and hose -2- from activated charcoal filter clear at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



- Lift off air cleaner housing -1-.
- Press release tabs and disconnect secondary air hose



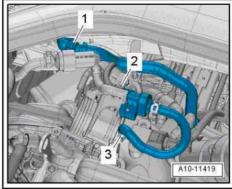
- Release hose clip -1- and disconnect vacuum hose from plenum chamber partition panel.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 - N80- and detach vacuum hose -3-.
- Detach activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80- from bracket and move it clear to the side with hoses still attached.



#### WARNING

Risk of injury caused by fuel.

♦ To allow the fuel pressure to dissipate, wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection before opening the fuel system.

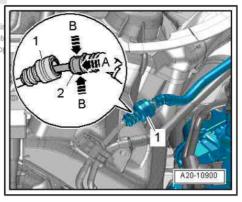




#### Caution

Take care to keep components clean.

- Observe rules for cleanliness when working on the fuel supply system ⇒ "3.1 Rules for cleanliness", page 7.
- Disconnect fuel line -2- ⇒ Fuel supply system; Rep. gr. 20; Plug-in connectors; Disconnecting plug-in connectors percent purposes,
- Seal off open lines and connections with clean plugs from en-ent. Co gine bung set - VAS 6122- .



Lift retaining clip -arrow- and detach coolant hose going to heat exchanger from rear of engine.



Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.



Lift retaining clip -arrow- and detach coolant hose (front right) from coolant pipe (front).

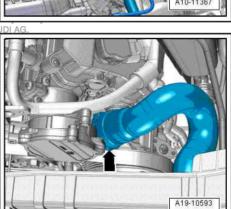


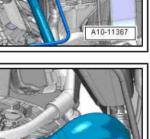
- Lift retaining clip -2- and disconnect coolant hose.
- Remove bolt -1- and move refrigerant line clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce with respect to the correctr

Lift retaining clip -arrow-, detach coolant hose (left-side) from coolant pipe (front) and move coolant hose clear.



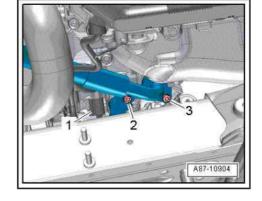




### Caution

Danger of damage to refrigerant lines and hoses.

- ◆ Do NOT stretch, kink or bend refrigerant lines and hoses.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and remove refrigerant line from air conditioner compressor.
- Seal off open lines and connections with clean plugs from engine bung set VAS 6122-.

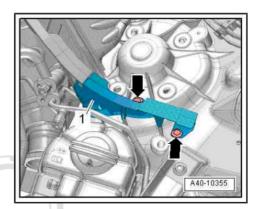




#### Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.

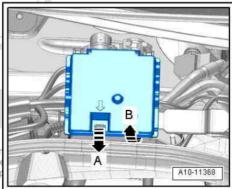
- Remove fasteners -arrows- on both sides and unclip cover -1-.
- Remove body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Removing and installing body brace.



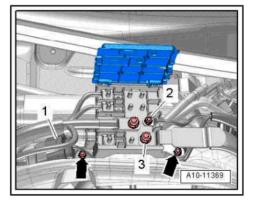
Release retainer -arrow A- and open cover -arrow B-



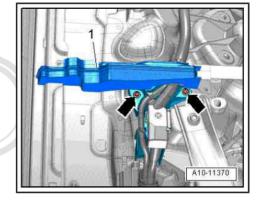
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co



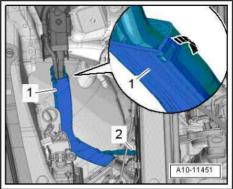
- Remove nuts -2 and 3- and move electrical wiring clear.
- Detach electrical connector -1- from bracket and unplug.
- Remove nuts -arrows- and detach terminal 30 wiring junction
   TV2- from plenum chamber partition panel.



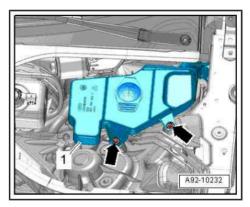
- Press foam wedge -1- to one side.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.



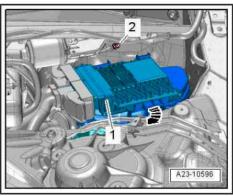
- Unscrew nut -2- on longitudinal member (right-side) and move earth cables clear.
- Release catches -arrow- to open wiring duct -1- and move electrical wiring harness clear. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part of permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accommendation of the commendation of the commen with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright I



Unscrew bolts -arrows- and pull filler neck -1- out of washer fluid reservoir and through opening in body to right side.



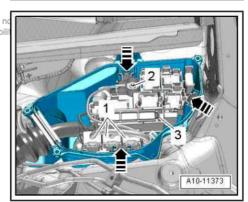
- Remove cap nut -2- and move earth wiring clear.
- Release fastener -arrow-, detach engine control unit J623--item 1- from bracket and swivel it to one side.



 Remove bolts -arrows- and detach cover -1- for electronics box in engine compartment.

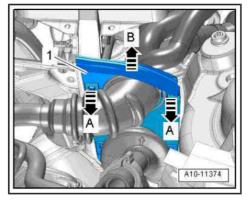


- Unplug\_electrical\_connectors:¬1ivandcunscrew\_nutes2¬forcelectole, is retrical wiring: unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Release catches -arrows- and detach relay carrier with fuse holder -3-.
- Disengage engine wiring harness at electronics box in engine compartment and move clear.

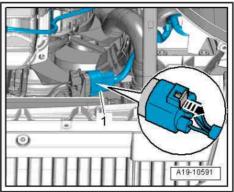


A10-11476

- Release catches -arrows A- and lift off wiring protector -1--arrow B-.
- Place wiring harness on engine and secure engine/motor control unit J623- to prevent it from dropping.



- Take electrical connector -1- for radiator fan out of bracket and unplug connector (push retainer to the rear -arrow- and press down release catch).
- Move clear electrical wiring harness going to radiator fan control unit.





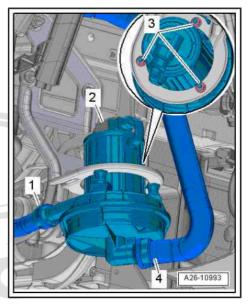
#### Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

- Unplug electrical connector -2- at secondary air pump motor -V101- and move electrical wiring clear.
- Press release tabs, disconnect secondary air hose -1- and move hose clear.



Note

Disregard items -3 and 4-.



#### Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme

- Unplug electrical connector -4- at secondary air pump motor ion in this V101- and move electrical wiring clear.
- Press release tabs, disconnect secondary air hose -2- and move hose clear.

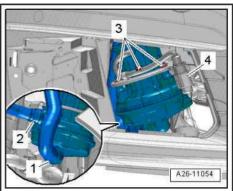


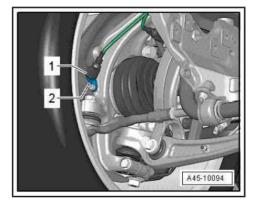
Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.



Unplug electrical connector -1- at front wheel speed sensor -2- -G45- / -G47- on both sides.





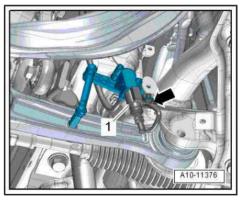
- If fitted, unplug electrical connector -1- at front vehicle level senders on both sides (-G78- and -G289-) and move electrical wiring clear -arrow-.
- Remove brake caliper and tie up in wheel housing with wire (brake hose remains attached) ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 46; Front brakes; Removing and installing brake caliper.



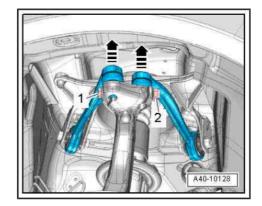
Caution

Risk of damage to brake pistons.

Do not press brake pedal with brake caliper removed.



- Remove nut -2- and pull out bolt -1-.
- Pull upper suspension links upwards out of wheel bearing housing -arrows-.
- Repeat procedure on opposite side of vehicle.

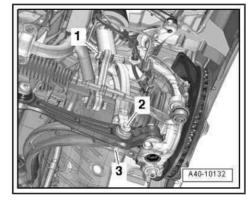


- Remove bolt -1- for anti-roll bar on both sides.
- Remove nut -3- on both sides.



Note

The bolts -2- are removed at a later stage.



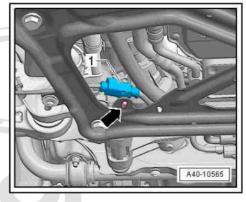
- Move clip clear -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1- and move wiring clear.
- Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace.



### Caution

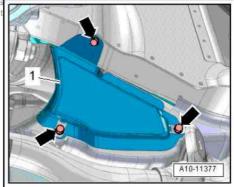
Risk of damage to running gear components.

The vehicle must NOT be lowered onto its wheels if the engine/gearbox mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly installed.

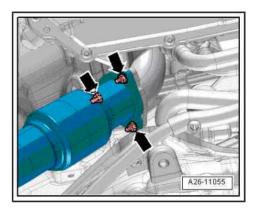


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

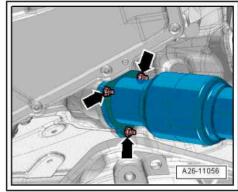
Remove bolts -arrows- on both sides and detach hear spile of AUDI AG -1- on subframe.



Unscrew nuts -arrows- for front silencer (left-side).



Unscrew nuts -arrows- for front silencer (right-side).

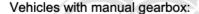




#### Caution

Risk of damage to flexible joints in front silencer.

- ◆ Do NOT bend the flexible joint in the front silencer more than 10°.
- Loosen and push back clamps -1, 2- and remove front silencers.
- Detach intermediate steering shaft from steering rack and move clear by telescoping splines together ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.



Remove bolt -2- and tie up clutch slave cylinder at side of engine compartment.

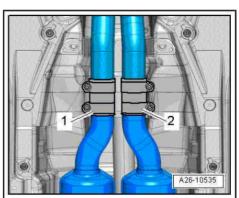


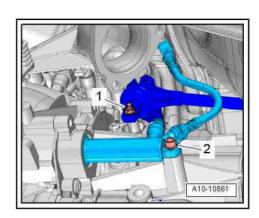
#### Caution

Risk of damage to clutch slave cylinder.

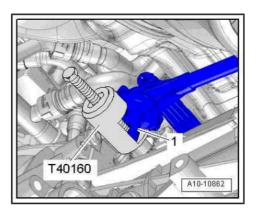
- ♦ Do not press clutch pedal after removing slave cylinder.
- Remove nut -1- for selector rod.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



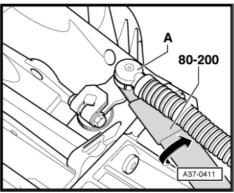


Apply puller - T40160- and pull off selector rod -1-.



## Vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive):

Pry ball socket -A- of selector lever cable off gearbox selector lever -arrow- using removal lever - 80 - 200- .

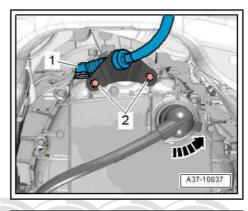


Remove bolts -2- for cable support bracket.



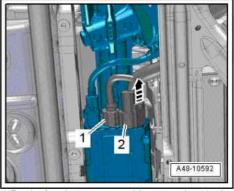
#### Note

- Take care not to bend or kink selector lever cable.
- Disregard -item 1- and -arrow-.



#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Unplug electrical connector -2- at power steering control unit - J500- (release retainer -arrow- and press down release catch).
- Unplug electrical connector -1- at power steering control unit - J500- .
- Move electrical wiring harness clear.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Set up the scissor-type assembly platform as follows:

Set up scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- with support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-, support set -VAS 6131/11- and supplementary set -VAS 6131/13- as follows:

Platform coordinates	Parts of support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10- , support set -VAS 6131/11- and supplementary set - VAS 6131/13-					
B4	/13-4	/10-4	/10-5	/13-1		
G4	/13-4	/10-4	/10-5	/13-1		
B6	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5	/10-11		
G6	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5	/10-11		
A8+C8	/13-6	ı	ı	/13-2		
F8+H8	/13-5	ı	ı	/13-2		
B14	/10-1	/10-3	/10-5	/11-1		
G14	/10-1	/10-4	/10-5	/11-1		

- Initially hand-tighten the support elements on the scissor-type assembly platform.
- Position scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B- horizontally.
- Take note of spirit level (bubble gauge).
- Position scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B- below engine/gearbox assembly.



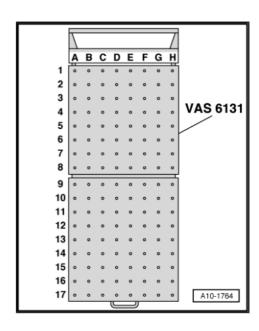
#### WARNING

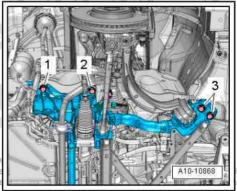
Accident risk if subframe mountings are detached.

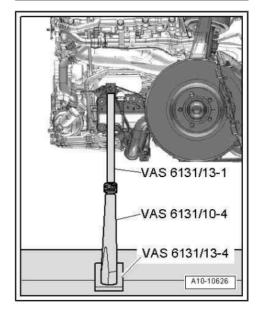
- ♦ Subframe bolts -2- and -3- must not be loosened.
- Remove subframe bolts -1- on both sides.

Protected by copyright. C permitted unless author with respect to the cor

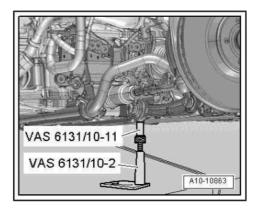
- Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- and -VAS 6131/13- at front left and right of subframe as shown.
- Make sure that threaded spindles are screwed in completely.



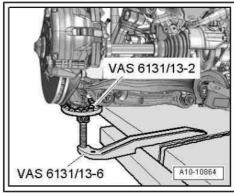




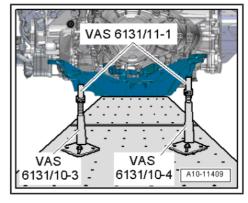
Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- (rear left and right) at front attachment points of subframe cross brace as shown.



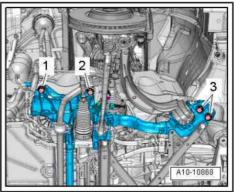
Position support elements from -VAS 6131/13- under left and right wheel bearing housings as shown.



- Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- and -VAS 6131/11- (rear left and right) at tunnel cross member as shown.
- Turn all spindles for support elements upwards until all locating lugs make contact with mounting points.
- Tighten base plates for support elements to 20 Nm on scissortype assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- .



- Mark installation position of subframe and tunnel cross member on longitudinal members with refer the period purposes, in part or in whole, is ber on commend the period by Subject and Label and such not guarantee or accept any liab
- Unscrew subframe botts 2- and 3- on both sides in several DI AG. stages and in diagonal sequence.





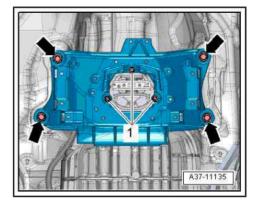
A40-10132

Remove bolts -arrows- on tunnel cross member.



Note

The illustration shows the tunnel cross member for vehicles with front-wheel drive; it is similar on other vehicles.



Remove bolt -2- on both sides.



#### Caution

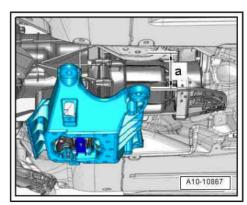
Danger of damage to hoses, pipes and wiring connections and to engine compartment.

- ♦ Check that all hoses and wiring connections between engine, gearbox, subframe and body have been detached.
- Carefully guide out engine/gearbox assembly with subframe from engine compartment when lowering.





- Lower engine/gearbox assembly using scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- initially only as far as distance -a-.
- Dimension -a- = 100 mm (maximum).



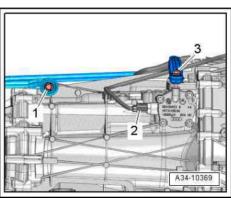
Vehicles with manual gearbox:

Remove bolts -1- and -3- for selector rod and push rod.



Note

Disregard, item n2 copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5:

- Pry ball socket -2- of selector lever cable off gearbox selector lever using removal lever - 80 - 200-
- Press off securing clip -1- and remove selector lever cable from gearbox.



Note

Take care not to bend or kink selector lever cable.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Lower engine/gearbox assembly. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability nformation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Pull out scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B- with engine/gearbox assembly from underneath vehicle.



⇒ "1.2.1 Separating engine and gearbox - manual gearbox 0B1", page 26

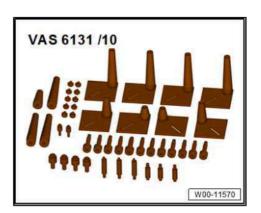
"1.2.2 Separating engine and gearbox - multitronic gearbox

⇒ "1.2.3 Separating engine and gearbox - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 36

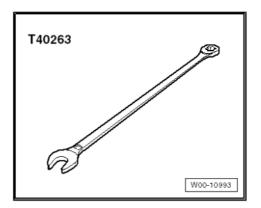
#### 1.2.1 Separating engine and gearbox - manual gearbox 0B1

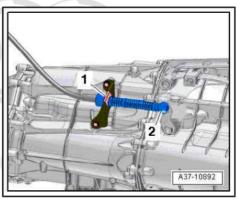
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-

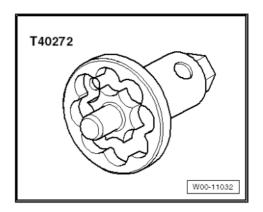


- Support -VAS 6131/13-7-
- Gearbox support VAS 6131/14-
- Wrench, 21 mm T40263-





◆ Turning-over tool - -



#### Procedure

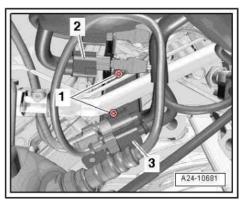
- Engine/gearbox assembly removed and secured to scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B-
- Remove electrical connector -3- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131- from bracket and unplug connector.

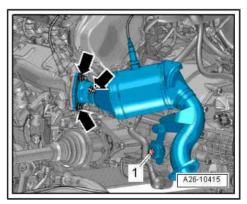


Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.

Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (left-side).



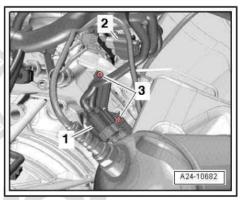


Remove electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- from bracket and unplug connector.



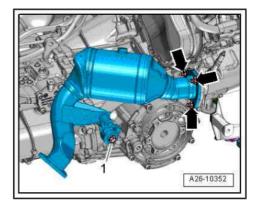
Note

Disregard items -2 and 3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (right-side).

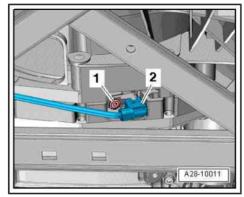


Unplug electrical connector -2- at engine speed sender - G28and move wiring clear.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.



Unplug electrical connector -2- at gear detection sensor -G604- and move electrical wiring clear.



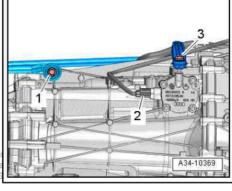
Note

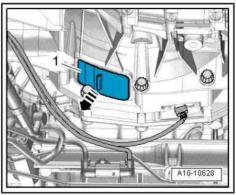
Disregard items -1 and 3-.

Unbolt drive shafts (left and right) from gearbox flange shafts ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Removing and installing drive shaft .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

Detach bottom cover -1- from gearbox -arrow-.







- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.



Note

If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Counterhold crankshaft using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- when loosening bolts for clutch module.

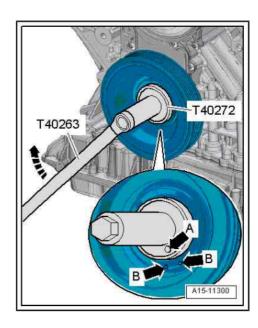


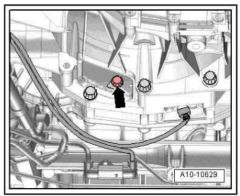
Note

When performing the next step, turn the crankshaft only in the normal direction of rotation -arrow-.

Remove 6 bolts -arrow- for clutch module, turning crankshaft 60° in normal direction of rotation each time.
ed by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





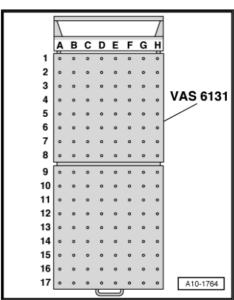
 Set up scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- with support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-, support -VAS 6131/13-7and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14- as follows.



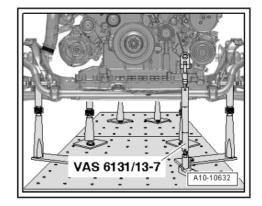
Note

The other support elements remain unchanged.

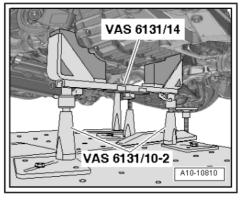
Platform coordinates	Parts from support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10- , support -VAS 6131/13-7- and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14-				
D2		/13	3-7		
B10	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5	/14	
G10	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5		



- Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- in threaded hole for poly Vbelt tensioner at front left of engine with M8x35 bolt and washer (outside diameter 25 mm), as illustrated.
- Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- to scissor-type assembly platform and tighten to 20 Nm.



- Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14- at front of gearbox, as illustrated.
- Screw spindles on both sides upwards until gearbox support - VAS 6131/14- makes full contact with gearbox.
- Tighten base plates for support elements to 20 Nm on scissortype assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- .

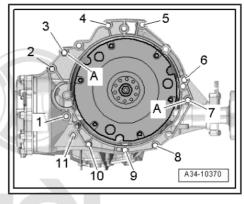


- Remove bolts -1- and -2- for starter.
- Separate starter from gearbox and leave in position.
- Unscrew remaining bolts -3 ... 11- securing engine to gearbox.



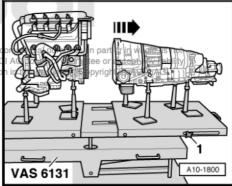
Note

Disregard -item A-.



Loosen clamping bolts -1- on sides of scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- and pull rear section of platform together with gearbox towards rear -arrow-.

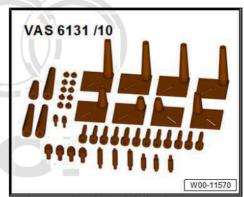
> Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU with respect to the correctness of informa



#### 1.2.2 Separating engine and gearbox - multitronic gearbox 0AW

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-

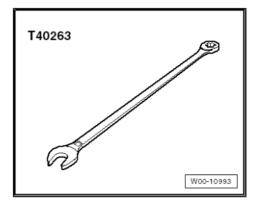


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG d

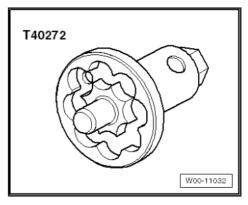
Support -VAS 6131/13-7- from support set, Audi Q7 ≥ 2005 mation in the VAS 6131/13-



- ♦ Gearbox support VAS 6131/14-
- ♦ Wrench, 21 mm T40263-



♦ Turning-over tool - T40272-



#### Procedure

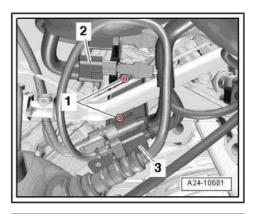
- Engine/gearbox assembly removed and secured to scissortype assembly platform - VAS 6131 B-
- Remove electrical connector -3- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- from bracket and unplug connector.

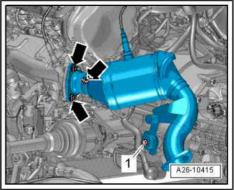


Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.

Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (left-side).



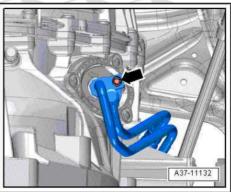




Note

Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping ATF.

- Remove bolt -arrow- and detach ATF lines from gearbox.
- Seal off open lines and connections with clean plugs from engine bung set VAS 6122- .





#### Caution

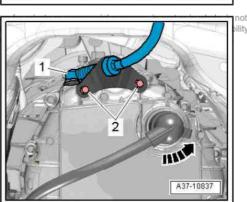
Risk of irreparable damage to gearbox control unit (mechatronic unit) because of electrostatic discharge.

- Do NOT touch connector contacts in gearbox connector with your hands.
- Touch gearbox housing with your hand (without wearing gloves) to eliminate electrostatic charge.
- Turn retainer catch anti-clockwise -arrow- and unplug electrical connector at gearbox.
- Move electrical wiring harness clear at gearbox.



Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.



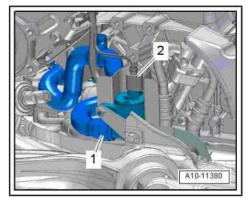


Release hose clip -1- and detach coolant hose.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

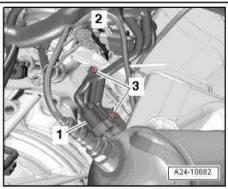


Remove electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- from bracket and unplug connector.

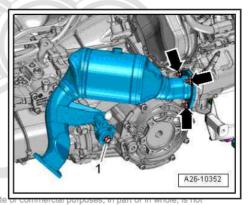


Note

Disregard items -2 and 3-.



Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (right-side).

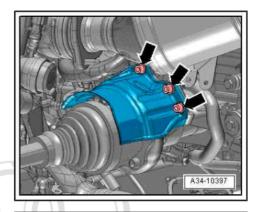


Protected by copyright. Copying for privat

 Lift retaining clip -arrow- and detach connection; from coolant of inform pipe (top).



- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield for drive shaft (left-side).
- Unbolt drive shaft (left and right) from gearbox flange shafts ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Removing and installing drive shaft .





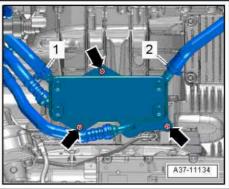
#### Note

Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.

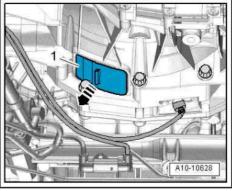
- Release hose clips -1, 2- and disconnect coolant hoses.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach ATF cooler.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or compermitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG

with respect to the correctness of information in



Detach bottom cover -1- from gearbox -arrow-.



- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.



#### Note

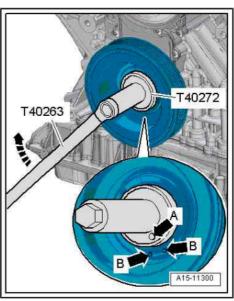
If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Counterhold crankshaft using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- when loosening bolts for dualmass flywheel.



#### Note

When performing the next step, turn the crankshaft only in the normal direction of rotation -arrow-.



Remove 6 bolts -arrow- for clutch module. Turn crankshaft each time by 60° in direction of engine rotation.



Note

Disregard items -2 and 3-.

Set up scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- with support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-, support -VAS 6131/13-7and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14- as follows.



Note

The other support elements remain unchanged.

Platform coordinates	Parts from support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10- , support -VAS 6131/13-7- and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14-			
F2		/13	3-7	
B10	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5	/14
G10	/10-1	/10-2	/10-5	

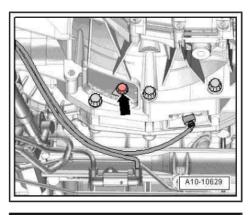
Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- at tapped hole at front of engine (right-side) as illustrated.

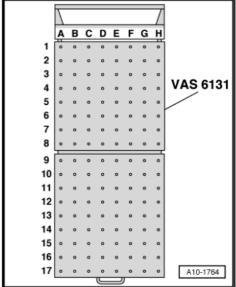


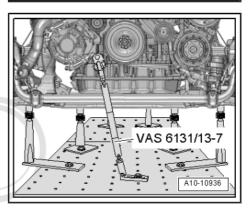
Note

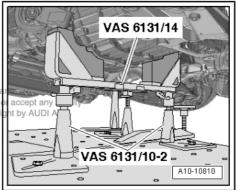
If bore has no thread, tap hole.

- Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- to scissor-type assembly platform and tighten to 20 Nm.
- Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- and gearbox support - VAS 6131/14- at front of gearbox, as illustrated.
- Screw spindles on both sides upwards until gearbox support VAS 6131/14- makes full contact with gearbox.
- Screw spindles upwards on both sides until mountings -VAS 6131/11-4- make full contact with gearbox commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
- Tighten base plates for support elements to 20 Nm on scissor type assembly platform VAS 6131 B- .









- Remove bolts -1- and -2- for starter.
- Separate starter from gearbox and leave in position.
- Unscrew remaining bolts -3 ... 11- securing engine to gearbox.

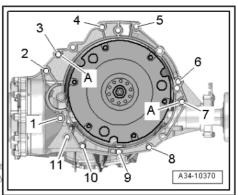


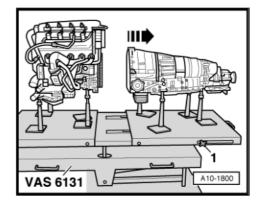
Note

Disregard -item A

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabi with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Loosen clamping bolts -1- on sides of scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- and pull rear section of platform together with gearbox towards rear -arrow-.

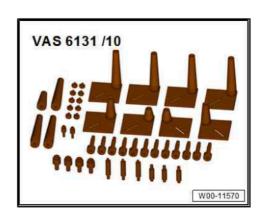




#### 1.2.3 Separating engine and gearbox - dual clutch gearbox 0B5

Special tools and workshop equipment required

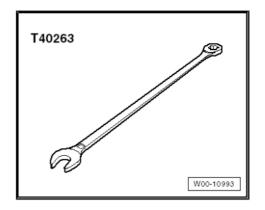
♦ Support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-



- Supplementary set -VAS 6131/11-
- Support -VAS 6131/13-7- from support set, Audi Q7 >2005 -VAS 6131/13-

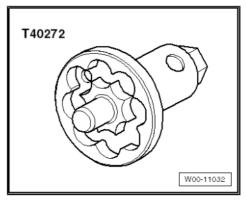


♦ Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



♦ Turning-over tool - T40272-





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any life with respect to the correspond of information in the corresponding to the corre

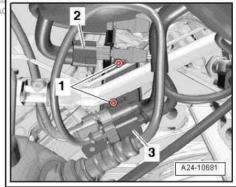
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

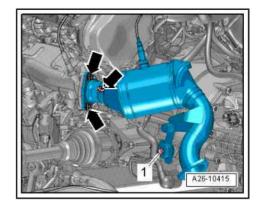
Engine/gearbox assembly removed and secured to scissortype assembly platform - VAS 6131 B-

- Remove electrical connector -3- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- from bracket and unplug connector.
- Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.

Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (left-side).







#### Caution

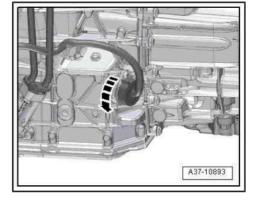
Risk of irreparable damage to gearbox control unit (mechatronic unit) because of electrostatic discharge.

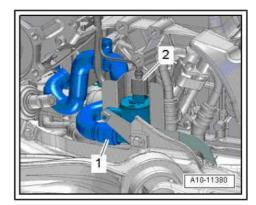
- Do NOT touch connector contacts in gearbox connector with your hands.
- Touch gearbox housing with your hand (without wearing gloves) to eliminate electrostatic charge.
- Turn retainer catch anti-clockwise -arrow- and unplug electrical connector at gearbox.
- Move electrical wiring harness clear at gearbox.
- Release hose clip -1- and detach coolant hose.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.



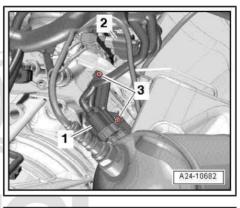


Remove electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- from bracket and unplug connector.



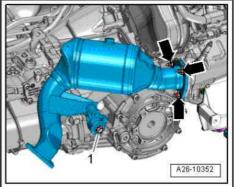
Note

Disregard items -2 and 3-.

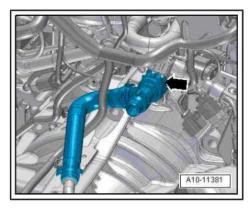


Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (right-side).

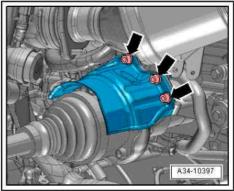
> Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD with respect to the correctness of information



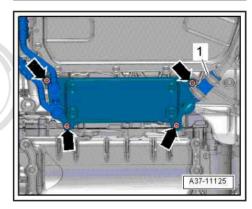
Lift retaining clip -arrow- and detach connection from coolant pipe (top).



- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield for drive shaft (left-side).
- Unbolt drive shaft (left and right) from gearbox flange shafts ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Removing and installing drive shaft .

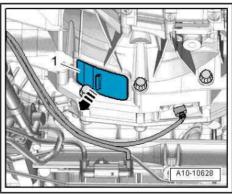


- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Release hose clip -1- and detach ATF cooler from coolant pipe on right side of gearbox.
- Swivel ATF cooler to the side.



Detach bottom cover -1- from gearbox -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or i permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by



- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.



Note

If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Counterhold crankshaft using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- when loosening bolts for dualmass flywheel.

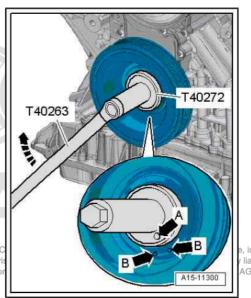


Note

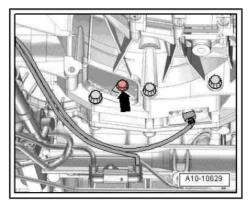
Protected by copyright. permitted unless author with respect to the co

When performing the next step, turn the crankshaft only in the normal direction of rotation -arrow-.

Remove 6 bolts -arrow- for clutch module. Turn crankshaft each time by 60° in direction of engine rotation.



liability ٩G.



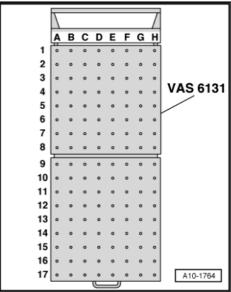
Set up scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- with support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10-, supplementary set -VAS 6131/11- and support -VAS 6131/13-7- as follows:



Note

The other support elements remain unchanged.

Platform coordinates	Parts from support set for Audi - VAS 6131/10- , supplementary set -VAS 6131/11- and support - VAS 6131/13-7-			
F2		/13	3-7	
B10	/10-1	/10-3	/10-5	/11-4
G10	/10-1	/10-3	/10-5	/11-4





Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- at tapped hole at front of engine (right-side) as illustrated.



Note

If bore has no thread, tap hole.

- Secure support -VAS 6131/13-7- to scissor-type assembly platform and tighten to 20 Nm.
- Position support elements from -VAS 6131/10- and mountings -VAS 6131/11-4- at front of gearbox, as shown in illustration.
- Screw spindles upwards on both sides until mountings -VAS 6131/11-4- make full contact with gearbox.
- Tighten base plates for support elements to 20 Nm on scissor-type assembly platform VAS 6131 B- .



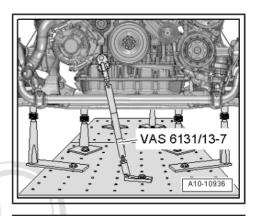
- permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara with respect to the correctness of information in this document. O
- Remove bolts -1- and -2- for starter.
- Separate starter from gearbox and leave in position.
- Unscrew remaining bolts -3 ... 10- securing engine to gearbox.

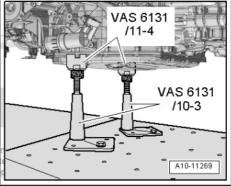


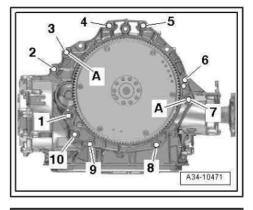
Note

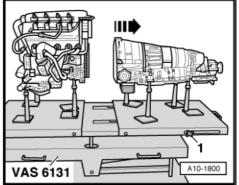
Disregard -item A-.

Loosen clamping bolts -1- on sides of scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- and pull rear section of platform together with gearbox towards rear -arrow-.





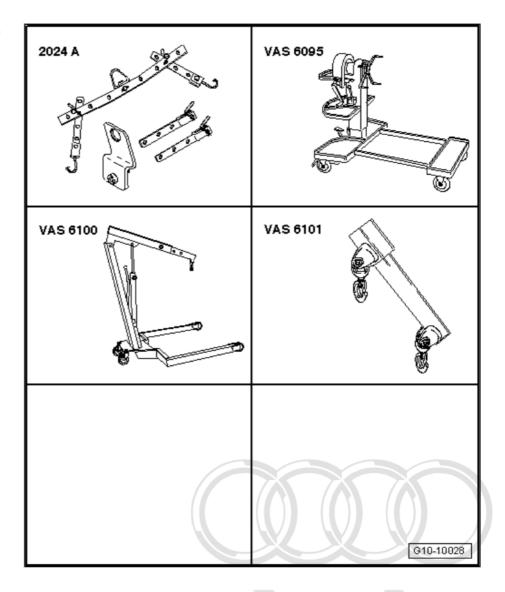




#### 1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support



Special tools and workshop equipment required



- Lifting tackle 2024 A-
- Engine and gearbox support VAS 6095- with universal mounting VAS 6095/1- and bracket for V6 FSI engine, Audi A6 - VAS 6095/1-5-
- Workshop hoist VAS 6100-
- Lift arm extension (workshop hoist) VAS 6101-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### Procedure



#### WARNING

#### Risk of accident!

- The engine can only be transported with the gearbox removed using the method described.
- Engine/gearbox assembly removed; engine separated from gearbox.
- Engine secured with support -VAS 6131/13-7-.
- Detach poly V-belt from air conditioner compressor ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.



- Remove air conditioner compressor ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket .
- Unscrew nut -1- and detach bracket with electrical wiring from subframe.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

Attach lifting tackle - 2024 A- to engine lifting eyes and workshop hoist as shown in illustration.



Note

To adjust to the centre of gravity of the assembly, the perforated rails of the support hooks must be positioned as shown.



# WARNING

Risk of accident.

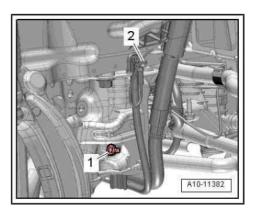
- The support hooks and retaining pins on the lifting tackle must be secured with locking pins -arrows-.
- Take up weight of engine with workshop hoist, but do not lift.
- Remove bolt -2- for engine mounting on both sides.

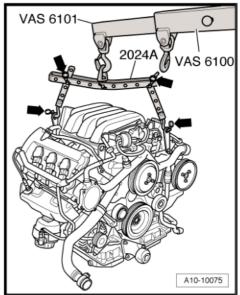


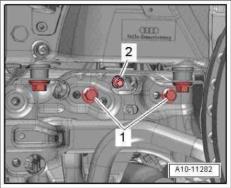
Note

Disregard -item 1-.



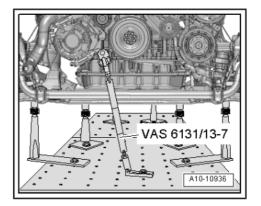




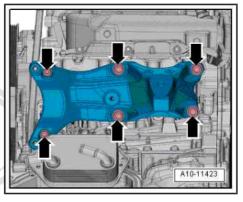


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove support -VAS 6131/13-7- from engine.
- Lift engine off engine cross member.

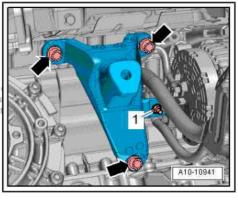


Remove bolts -arrows- and detach engine support (left-side) with bracket for air conditioner compressor.

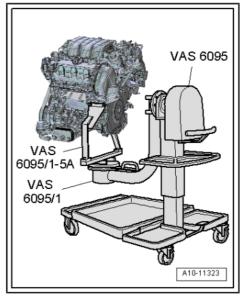


- Remove nut -1- and move earth wire clear at engine support.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove engine support (rightside).
- Tie up starter on engine.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright



Secure engine with universal mounting - VAS 6095/1- and support bracket for V6 FSI engine, Audi A6 - VAS 6095/1-5-to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095- as shown in illustration and tighten to 40 Nm.

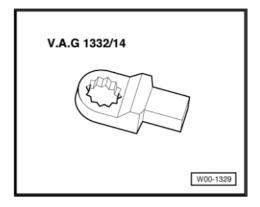




#### 1.4 Installing engine

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Ring spanner insert AF 16 - V.A.G 1332/14-



◆ Assembly aid - T40169-

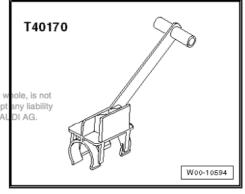


T40169 W00-10593

Transport lock - T40170-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in v permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Tightening torques



Note

- Tightening torques apply only to lightly greased, oiled, phosphated or black-finished nuts and bolts.
- ♦ Additional lubricants such as engine or gear oil may be used, but do not use lubricants containing graphite.
- Do not use de-greased parts.
- Tolerance for tightening torques: ± 15 %.

Component		Nm
Bolts/nuts	M6	9
	M7	15



Component		Nm
	M8	20
	M10	40
	M12	65

- Assembly mountings ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - assembly mountings", page 52
- Engine to gearbox ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Tightening torques for gearbox / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Tightening torques for gear-

#### Procedure



#### Note

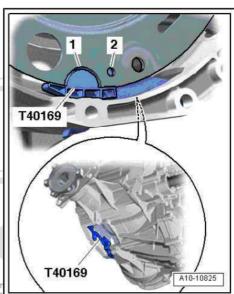
- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- Renew self-locking nuts and bolts as well as seals, gaskets and O-rings.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.
- Engine with subframe positioned on scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B-
- Engine secured with support -VAS 6131/13-7-.
- Install engine supports and engine mountings ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - assembly mountings", page 52.
- Before installing gearbox, remove residue from threaded holes for engine/gearbox bolts in cylinder block using a thread tap.
- Check whether aluminium bolts securing engine to gearbox can be reused; if so, apply marking ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Tightening torques for gearbox / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Tightening torques for gearbox.
- The following preparations are required before joining engine and gearbox:
- Insert assembly aid T40169- into gearbox housing between dual-mass flywheel and gearbox housing from below, as illustrated.
- The assembly aid must engage in the semi-circular recess -1- and in the inspection hole -2-.



#### Note

There is only one inspection hole on the circumference; turn the dual-mass flywheel accordingly.

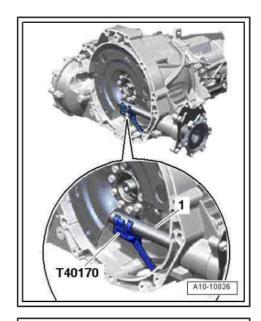
Insert pin of assembly aid into hole on gearbox housing.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG

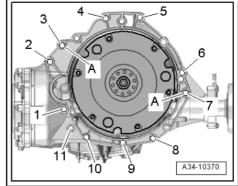
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG

Insert transport lock - T40170- into gearbox housing and dualmass flywheel from below and clamp onto flange shaft -1-.



Vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive):

- Check whether dowel sleeves -A- for centring engine and gearbox are fitted in cylinder block; install missing dowel
- Bring gearbox into position on engine and tighten bolts -1, 6 ... 11-.



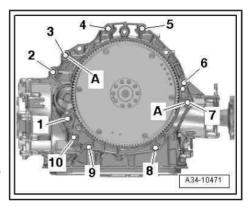
Vehicles with 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5:

- Check whether dowel sleeves -A- for centring engine and gearbox are fitted in cylinder block; install missing dowel sleeves.
- Bring gearbox into position on engine and tighten bolts -1, 6 ... 10-.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

Remove transport lock - T40170- and assembly aid - T40169-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

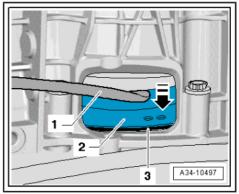




#### Note

The following step is necessary to ensure that the dual-mass flywheel is straight and that it makes even contact with the drive plate.

Use assembly lever -1- to press dual-mass flywheel -2- slightly against drive plate -3- in direction of -arrow-.



Bolt dual-mass flywheel onto drive plate as follows:



Note

Use ring spanner insert AF 16 - V.A.G 1332/14- to tighten bolts.

Screw in first bolt -arrow- hand-tight (2 Nm).



- T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.



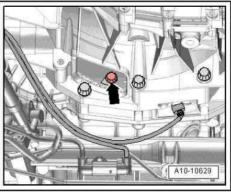
Note

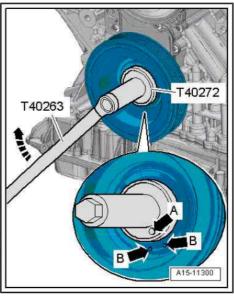
If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

- Turn crankshaft 180° further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- with wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- .
- Now tighten bolt accessible in this position to specified torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 30; Clutch; Exploded view - clutch module; ⇒ Rep. gr. 30; Clutch; Exploded view - flywheel and dual clutch / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Installing gearbox.
- Turn crankshaft by 60° each time and tighten remaining 5 bolts to specified torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 30 ; Clutch; Exploded view clutch module; ⇒ Rep. gr. 30; Clutch; Exploded view flywheel and dual clutch / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Installing gearbox.
- rotected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Install ATF cooler ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; ATF circuit; Removing and AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability installing ATF cooler / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF cooler.
- Install drive shafts and heat shield for drive shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Exploded view - drive shaft .
- Install ATF lines ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF lines .
- Install catalytic converters ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333

Vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive):

Raise engine/gearbox assembly using scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- .







#### Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5:

- Raise engine/gearbox assembly using scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- only until distance between subframe and body is -a-.
- Dimension -a- = min. 100 mm.
- Install selector lever cable and adjust it if necessary ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever cable .
- Raise engine/gearbox assembly further using scissor-type assembly platform - VAS 6131 B- .

#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Align subframe and gearbox carrier on longitudinal members according to markings made before removal.
- Tighten subframe bolts only to specified torque (do not turn further); the bolts should only be fully tightened after performing the wheel alignment check ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe.



# WARNING

Risk of accident if bolted connections are loose.

- Do NOT drive the vehicle unless the subframe bolts have been tightened to their final torque.
- Tighten bolts for tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings / ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings .

Venicles withigh Convin for payers or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by ADDI AG. ADDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

"Install selector rod and push rod ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 Selector mechanism; Exploded view - selector mechanism.

Vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive):

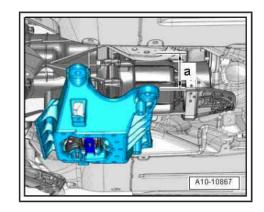
Install selector lever cable and adjust it if necessary ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Selector mechanism; Removing and installing selector lever cable .

#### Continued for all vehicles:

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:



- Do not remove plugs or protective caps until you are ready to fit the relevant line.
- Hose connections and air pipes/hoses must be free of oil and grease prior to fitting.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.
- Secure intermediate steering shaft to steering rack ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.



- Install front silencers "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333.
- Install upper suspension links and suspension strut ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view - suspension strut, upper links.
- Install subframe cross brace, anti-roll bar and heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe .
- Install brake calipers ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 46; Front brakes; Removing and installing brake caliper.
- Install engine control unit ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623 ", page 330 .
- Install filler neck for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92; Windscreen washer system; Exploded view windscreen washer system .
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not **Electrical connections**: and routing ADD Current flow diagrams: or accept any liability Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations on in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Install electrical wiring, terminal 30 wiring junction 2 TV22and cover for electronics box in engine compartment ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 97; Relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronic boxes; Overview of fitting locations - relay carriers, fuse carriers, electronic boxes.
- Install body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view - suspension strut, upper links.
- Install refrigerant lines ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Refrigerant circuit; Exploded view - condenser.
- Observe steps required after re-connecting battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .



#### Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to control units because of excessive voltage.

- Never use battery charging equipment for boost starting.
- Install air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Install lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- Install plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .
- Install front longitudinal member (bottom) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Lock carrier; Exploded view - lock carrier.
- Fill with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.
- Connect coolant hoses with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector" page 252.





#### Note

#### Do not reuse coolant.

- Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.
- Charge refrigerant system ⇒ Air conditioner with refrigerant R134a .
- Install wheel housing liners ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) .
- Fit front wheels ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44; Wheels, tyres .
- Check wheel alignment ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44; Wheel alignment check; Wheel alignment procedure.



- Tighten subframe bolts to final setting after performing wheel alignment check.
- Install noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation .

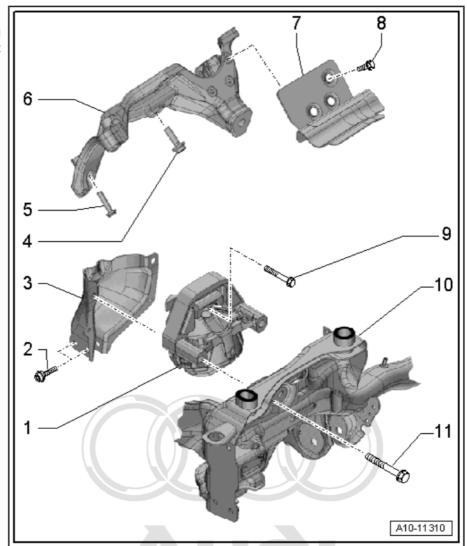
#### 2 Assembly mountings

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view assembly mountings", page 52
- ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings", page 55
- ⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing gearbox mounting", page 61

#### 2.1 Exploded view - assembly mountings

Engine mounting

- 1 Engine mounting
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings", page 55
- 2 Bolt
  - □ 20 Nm
- 3 Bracket
  - For engine mounting
  - Renew retaining plate if engine mounting is defective
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 40 Nm
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 20 Nm
- 6 Engine support
  - ☐ Left-side: with bracket for air conditioner compressor
- 7 Heat shield
- 8 Bolt
  - □ 10 Nm
- 9 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ 90 Nm +90°
- 10 Subframe
- 11 Bolt
  - □ 55 Nm



# Gearbox mounting for manual gearbox 0B1

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### 1 - Nut

☐ Tightening torque ⇒
Rep. gr. 34; Assembly
mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 2 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 3 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 4 - Nut

Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 5 - Gearbox support

Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 62

#### 6 - Gearbox mounting

Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3.2 Removing and

installing gearbox mounting - manual gearbox 0B1", page 61

#### 7 - Stop (bottom)

□ For gearbox mounting

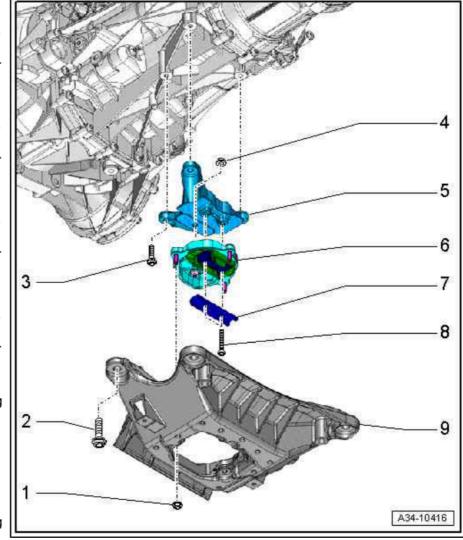
#### 8 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 9 - Tunnel cross member

□ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

Gearbox mounting for multitronic gearbox 0AW



#### 1 - Nut

□ Tightening torque ⇒
Rep. gr. 37; Assembly
mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 2 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 3 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 4 - Nut

☐ Tightening torque ⇒
Rep. gr. 37; Assembly
mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 5 - Gearbox support

#### 6 - Gearbox mounting

Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3.3 Removing and installing gearbox mounting - multitronic gearbox 0AW", page 62

#### 7 - Stop (bottom)

For gearbox mounting

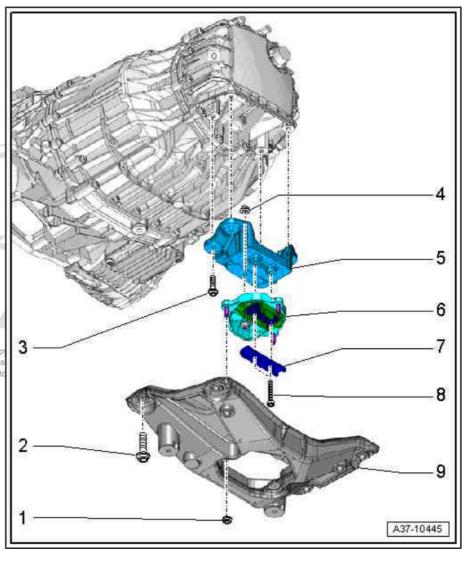
#### 8 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

### 9 - Tunnel cross member

☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

Gearbox mounting for dual clutch gearbox 0B5





## 1 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

## 2 - Tunnel cross member

Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 3 - Stop

For gearbox mounting

#### 4 - Gearbox mounting

 Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3.5 Removing and installing gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 63

#### 5 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 6 - Nut

Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

# 7 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

### 8 - Gearbox support

Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5",

#### 9 - Bolt

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

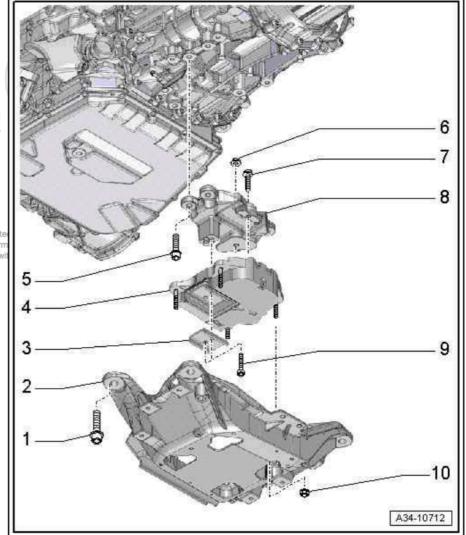
#### 2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings



Note

- To avoid repeat repairs, proceed as follows if an engine mounting is defective:
- Renew engine mounting and corresponding bracket.

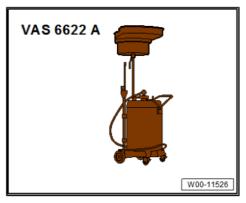
Special tools and workshop equipment required



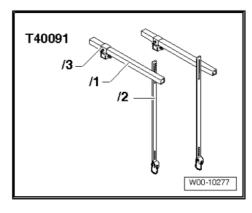
Support bracket - 10-222A-



Used oil collection and extraction unit - VAS 6622A-



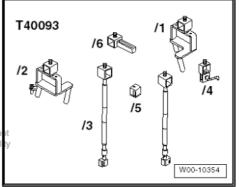
◆ Engine support (basic set) - T40091-



Engine support bracket (supplementary set) - T40093-



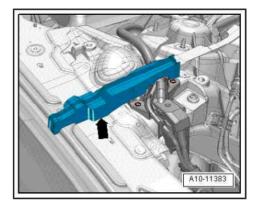
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabil with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





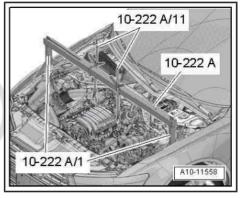
#### Removing

- Pull off foam wedge -arrow- (left and right) upwards.
- Remove engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64



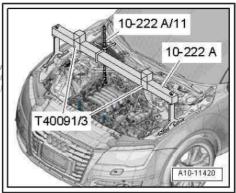
Engine mounting (left-side) - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

- Set up support bracket 10-222A- on suspension turrets (left and right) as illustrated.
- Partly take up weight of engine with spindles.

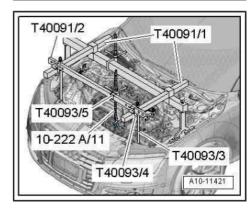


Engine mounting (left-side) - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

- Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ page 285.
- Set up support bracket 10-222A- on suspension turrets (left and right) as illustrated pyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acceptable.
- Attach spindle will 0-222A/112 to engine lifting eye (right side) entitle



- Attach further components of support bracket as shown in illustration. Position supports -T40093/3- on both sides on flanges of longitudinal members (left and right).
- Partly take up weight of engine with spindles.



## Engine mounting (right-side):

- Set up support bracket 10-222A- on suspension turrets (left and right) as illustrated.
- Partly take up weight of engine with spindle.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

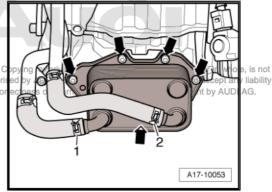
- Remove noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Remove relevant front wheel spoiler ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view-wheel housing liner (front).

# 10-222 A/11 10-222 A

#### Engine mounting (left-side):

- Place used oil collection and extraction unit VAS 6622A- underneath.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and tie up engine oil cooler to one side vright. with coolant hoses -1, 2- attached. permitted unless author

with respect to the co

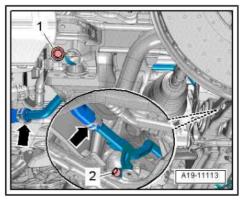


Remove bolts -1 and 2- and press coolant pipe (bottom left) to the side.



#### Note

- Disregard -arrows-.
- The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.

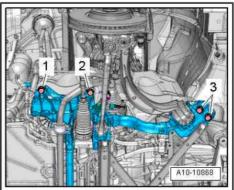


Remove bolt -2- for subframe (left-side).



#### Note

Bolts -1- and -3- on left side and all bolts for subframe on right side remain fitted.





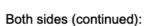
## Engine mounting (right-side):

- Unscrew nut -1- and detach bracket with electrical wiring from subframe.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

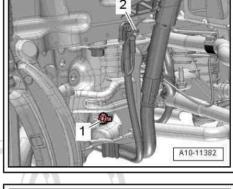


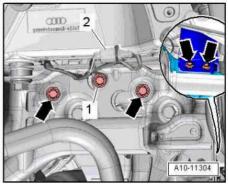
Remove bolts -1- and -arrows- and place relevant retaining plate to one side.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or co permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A with respect to the correctness of information i

- Using spindle 10 222 A /11- -item 1-, raise engine through distance -a- on corresponding side.
- Distance -a- = approx. 20 mm.
- Detach engine mounting on relevant side.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

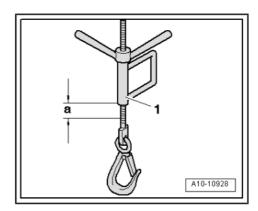
Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install engine oil cooler ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203 .
- Install air cleaner housing  $\Rightarrow$  "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285 .
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view assembly mountings", page 52
- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

ng for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ⇒ General body repairs, exterior Repegru 66 Wheel housing G does not guarantee or accept any liability liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front) so of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





#### 2.3 Removing and installing gearbox mounting

- ⇒ "2.3.1 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - manual gearbox 0B1", page 61
- ⇒ "2.3.2 Removing and installing gearbox mounting manual gearbox 0B1", page 61
- ⇒ "2.3.3 Removing and installing gearbox mounting multitronic gearbox 0AW", page 62
- ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 62
- ⇒ "2.3.5 Removing and installing gearbox mounting dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 63

#### 2.3.1 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - manual gearbox 0B1

#### Removing

- Remove tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach gearbox support and gearbox mounting from gearbox.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

#### Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings

#### 2.3.2 Removing and installing gearbox mounting - manual gearbox 0B1

#### Removing

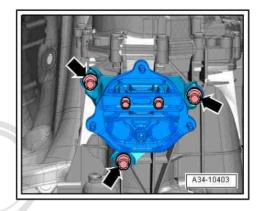
- Remove gearbox support with gearbox mounting ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5" page 62 percial purposes, in part
- Unscrew bolts -1- and detach stop (bottom) 2 or for gearbox. Copyrig mounting.
- Remove nut -4- and detach gearbox mounting -5- from gearbox support -3-.

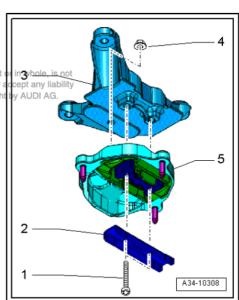
# Installing

- Position gearbox support -3- on gearbox mounting -5- and hand-tighten nut -4-.
- Secure stop (bottom) -2- with bolts -1-.
- Tighten nut -4-.
- Install gearbox support with gearbox mounting ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 62.

#### Tightening torques

⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings





#### 2.3.3 Removing and installing gearbox mounting - multitronic gearbox 0AW

#### Removing

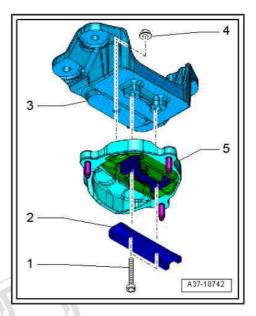
- Remove tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings .
- Unscrew bolts -1- and detach stop (bottom) -2- for gearbox
- Remove nut -4- and detach gearbox mounting -5- from gearbox support -3-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

#### Tightening torques

⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings



### 2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5

#### Removing

- Remove tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach gearbox support and gearbox mounting from gearbox.

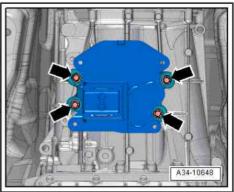
#### Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not go

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

#### **Tightening torques**

⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings





#### 2.3.5 Removing and installing gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5

#### Removing

- Remove gearbox support with gearbox mounting ⇒ page 62.
- Unscrew bolt -1- and detach stop -2- for gearbox mounting.
- Remove nut -5- and bolt -6- and detach gearbox mounting -3- from gearbox support -4-.

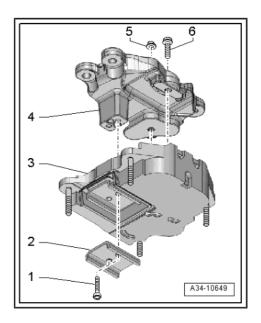
#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Position gearbox support -4- on gearbox mounting -3-.
- Hand-tighten nut -5- and bolt -6-.
- Tighten bolt -1- for stop -2-.
- Tighten nut -5- and bolt -6-.
- Install gearbox support with gearbox mounting ⇒ "2.3.4 Removing and installing gearbox support with gearbox mounting - dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 62.

## Tightening torques

⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

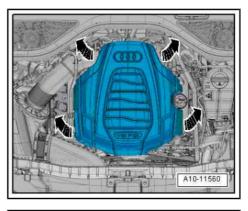
#### 3 Engine cover panel

#### ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64

#### 3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel

#### Removing

Carefully pull engine cover panel off ball studs one after another -arrows-. Do not jerk engine cover panel away, and do not try to pull on one side only.



- One-piece version
- Two-piece version

# Installing

- To avoid damage, do not strike the engine cover panel with your fist or with any kind of tool.
- Observe oil filler neck when positioning engine cover panel (one-piece version).
- First press the engine cover panel (one-piece version) with both hands onto the ball studs at the rear and then onto the ball studs at the front.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



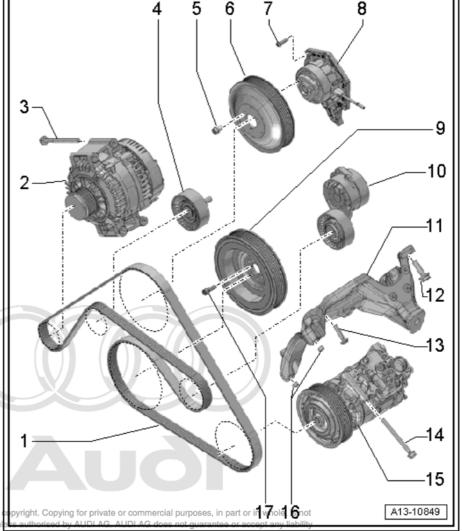
# Crankshaft group

# Cylinder block (pulley end)

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view poly V-belt drive", page 65
- ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66
- ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt",
- ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing vibration damper", page 68
- ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)", page

#### 1.1 Exploded view - poly V-belt drive

- 1 Poly V-belt
  - Check for wear
  - Before removing, mark direction of rotation with chalk or felt-tip pen
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66
  - Do not kink
  - □ When installing, make sure it is properly seated on pulleys
- 2 Alternator
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Alternator; Removing and installing alternator
- 3 Bolt
  - □ Tightening torque ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Alternator; Exploded view - alternator
- 4 Idler roller
  - For poly V-belt
  - □ 45 Nm
- 5 Bolt
  - □ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 1 (page 228)
- 6 Poly V-belt pulley
  - ☐ For coolant pumpotected by
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing coolant pump", page 231
- 7 Bolt
  - ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 11 (page 229)
- 8 Coolant pump
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing coolant pump", page 231



9 - Vi	bration damper
	With poly V-belt pulley
	Can only be installed in one position
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing vibration damper", page 68
10 - T	Tensioner
	For poly V-belt
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt", page 68 40 Nm
11 - E	Engine support (left-side)
	With bracket for air conditioner compressor
12 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 52)
13 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque <u>⇒ Item 5 (page 52)</u>
14 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque $\Rightarrow$ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit
15 - <i>A</i>	Air conditioner compressor
	Do not unscrew or disconnect refrigerant hoses or pipes.
	Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching

16 - Dowel sleeves

17 - Bolt

□ Renew

□ 20 Nm +90°

Sealing flange (pulley end) - tightening torque and sequence

 Tighten bolts -arrows- in stages and in diagonal sequence; final torque 9 Nm.

and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket

Protected by copyright.

Description of the correctness of the correct

A13-10009

# 1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt

#### Removing

Remove engine cover panel (front)
 ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
 page 64





#### WARNING

Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

♦ Even when the ignition is switched off, the radiator fans can start up without warning due to accumulated heat in the engine compartment, etc.



#### Caution

Wrong direction of rotation for a used poly V-belt can lead to irreparable damage.

- Mark direction of rotation of poly V-belt with chalk or felttip pen for re-installation.
- Move tensioner in clockwise direction -arrow- to slacken poly V-belt.
- Remove poly V-belt and release tensioner.



#### Note

Ignore -T10060 A- .

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the tollowing authorised

- Fit poly V-belt on pulleys as shown in illustration.

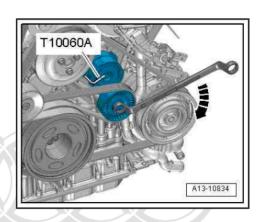
- 1 -Alternator
- Idler roller 2 -
- 3 -Coolant pump
- 4 -Air conditioner compressor
- 5 -Poly V-belt tensioner
- Vibration damper

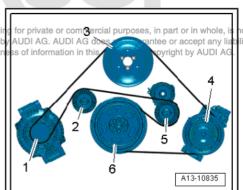


#### Note

When installing poly V-belt, make sure it is properly seated on pulleys.

- Start engine and check that poly V-belt(s) run properly.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.





# 1.3 Removing and installing tensioner for poly V-belt

#### Removing

- Remove poly V-belt
   ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66 .
- If fitted, detach cover from tensioner.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach poly V-belt tensioner -2- from cylinder block.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Install poly V-belt
 ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66

#### Tightening torques

♦ ± "1.1 Exploded view - poly V-belt drive", page 65

# Removing and installing vibration damper

#### Removing

- Remove poly V-belt
   ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and remove vibration damper.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- ♦ Can only be installed in one position.
- Install poly V-belt
   ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.

#### Tightening torques

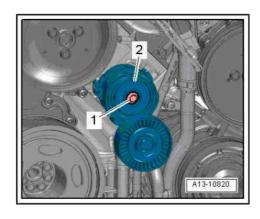
♦ ± "1.1 Exploded view - poly V-belt drive", page 65

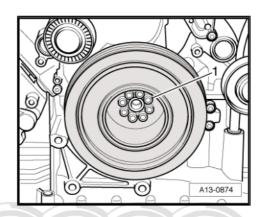
#### Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

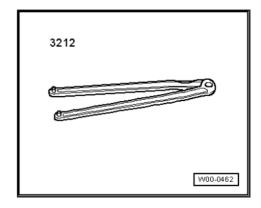


with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

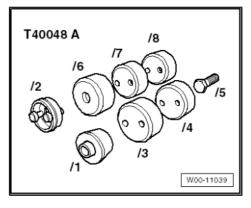




♦ Pin wrench - 3212-



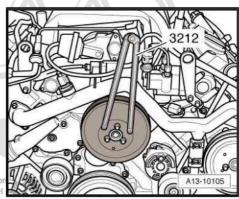
Assembly tool - T40048A-



- ♦ Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- ♦ Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### Procedure

- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Remove vibration damper ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing vibration damper", page 68
- Slacken bolts for coolant pump pulley (counterhold with pin wrench - 3212- ).
- Remove bolts and take off poly V-belt pulley.



Protected by copyright. Copying for p permitted unless authorised by AUDI

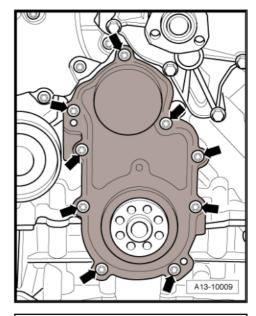
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remove bolts -arrows- and release sealing flange (pulley end) from bonded joint.



Note

Renew sealing flange (pulley end).





#### Caution

Protect lubrication system against contamination.

Cover exposed parts of the engine.



#### **WARNING**

Risk of eye injury.

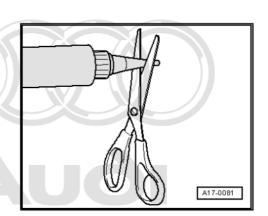
- Put on safety goggles.
- Remove sealant residue from cylinder block and sump (top section) -1- using rotating plastic brush or similar.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.



#### Note

Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle Ø approx. 1.5 mm).



A17-10940





#### Caution

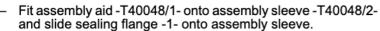
Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

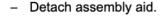
- ♦ The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.
- Apply bead of sealant -arrow- onto sealing surface of new sealing flange (pulley end) as shown in illustration.
- The groove on the sealing surface must be completely filled with sealant.
- The bead of sealant must project 1.5 ... 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.

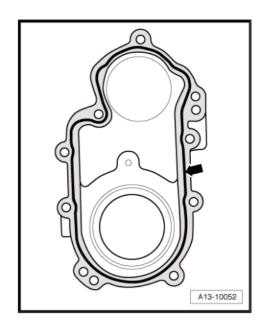


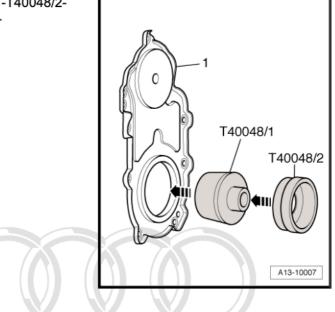
#### Note

The sealing flange (pulley end) must be installed within 5 minutes after applying the sealant.











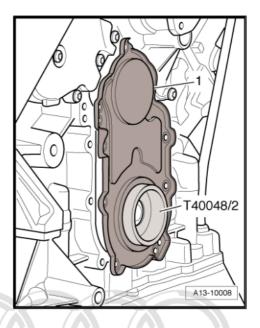
- First position sealing flange (with assembly sleeve -T40048/2inserted) on crankshaft.
- Keep sealing flange straight while pushing it onto engine sealing surface. Then bolt on ⇒ Fig. ""Sealing flange (pulley end) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 66.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install poly V-belt pulley for coolant pump ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump/thermostat", page 228.
- Install vibration damper ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing vibration damper", page 68.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Sealing flange (pulley end) tightening torque and sequence", page 66
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation





#### 2 Cylinder block (gearbox end)

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view cylinder block (gearbox end)", page 73
- ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74
- ⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing sender wheel", page 75
- ⇒ "2.4 Checking sender wheel", page 76
- ⇒ "2.5 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)", page 77
- ⇒ "2.6 Renewing needle bearing in drive plate", page 79

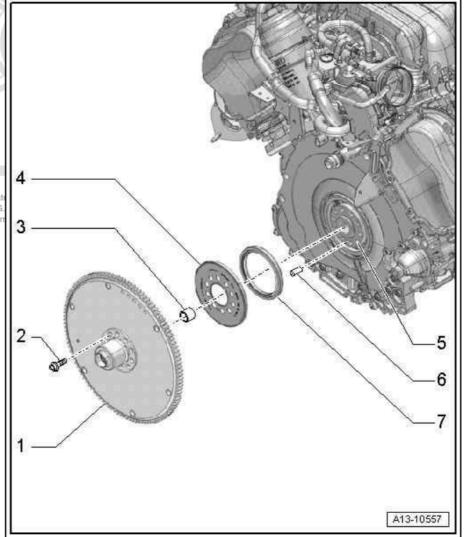
#### 2.1 Exploded view - cylinder block (gearbox end)



Note

When performing assembly work, secure engine to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-⇒ "1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support", page 41.

- 1 Drive plate
  - With bearing flange
  - Check running surface on bearing flange and holes for clutch module for cracks and scoring.
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74
- 2 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
- 3 Needle bearing correctness of info
  - For vehicles with manual gearbox or multitronic gearbox 0AW (frontwheel drive)
  - ☐ Installation position: closed side towards engine
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.6 Renewing needle bearing in drive plate", page 79
- 4 Sender wheel
  - ☐ For engine speed sender - G28-





#### Caution

Risk of magnetic fields causing irreparable damage to sender wheel.

The sender wheel must be kept away from magnets (e.g. base of torch, loudspeaker).

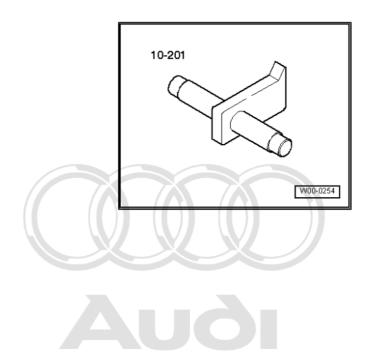
I∳the drive plate/flywheel or the sender wheel itself has been removed or renewed, check that the sender wheel is operating correctly before installation ⇒ "2.4 Checking sender wheel", page 76

- □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing sender wheel", page 75
- ☐ Checking ⇒ "2.4 Checking sender wheel", page 76
- 5 Crankshaft
- 6 Dowel pin
- 7 Oil seal
  - ☐ For crankshaft (gearbox end)
  - □ Renewing ⇒ "2.5 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)", page 77

#### 2.2 Removing and installing drive plate

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Counterhold tool - 10-201-





#### Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Insert counterhold tool 10-201- to slacken bolts.



#### Caution

Take care not to damage outer surface of bearing flange on drive plate.

◆ Use a multi-point socket bit with a length of at least 40 mm to slacken and tighten the drive plate bolts.

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remove bolts and take off drive plate and sender wheel.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Pay attention to dowel pin when installing drive plate.
- Fit counterhold tool 10-201- the other way round to tighten bolts.

#### **Tightening torques**

page 73

#### 2.3 Removing and installing sender wheel

#### Removing

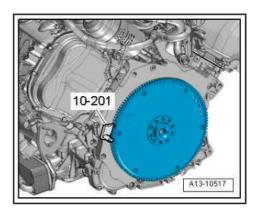
- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove drive plate ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74



#### Caution

Risk of magnetic fields causing irreparable damage to sender wheel.

- The sender wheel must be kept away from magnets (e.g. base of torch, loudspeaker).
- ♦ If the drive plate/flywheel or the sender wheel itself has been removed or renewed, check that the sender wheel is operating correctly before installation ⇒ "2.4 Checking sender wheel", page 76



Detach sender wheel -arrow-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

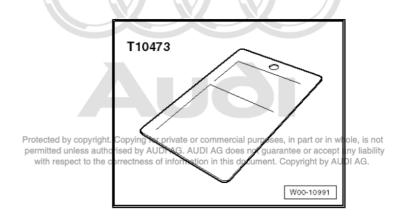
Install drive plate ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74

# A28-10118

#### 2.4 Checking sender wheel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Magnetic lens - T10473-



#### Procedure

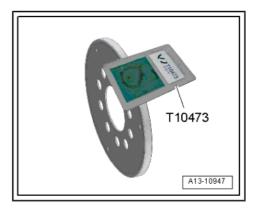
Sender wheel removed



#### Caution

Risk of magnetic fields causing irreparable damage to sender wheel.

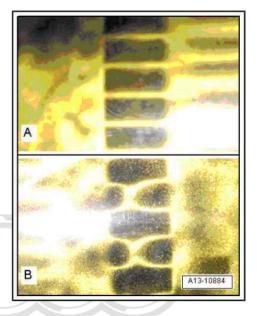
- The sender wheel must be kept away from magnets (e.g. base of torch, loudspeaker).
- If the drive plate/flywheel or the sender wheel itself has been removed or renewed, check that the sender wheel is operating correctly before installation.
- Check whole circumference of sender wheel using magnetic lens - T10473- as shown in illustration.





Inspection image of sender wheel

- A Sender wheel OK
- B Sender wheel defective



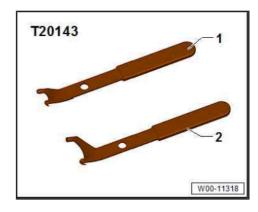
#### Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox 2.5 end)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Fitting tool - T10122 A-

T10122A Protected by copyright. Copying for p permitted unless authorised by AUD G. AUDI AG doe rmation in this with respect to the correctness of W00-11037

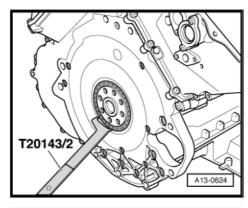
- ♦ Guide piece T10122/6-
- ◆ Extractor hook T20143/2-

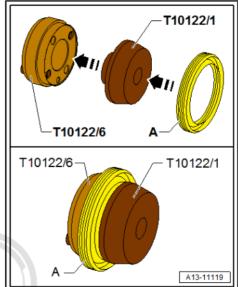


#### AUOI

#### Procedure

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove drive plate
   ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74.
- Pry out oil seal using extractor tool -T20143/2- .
- Clean contact surface and sealing surface.
- Fit assembly aid -T10122/1- onto guide piece T10122/6- and slide oil seal -A- onto guide piece.
- Detach assembly aid -T10122/1- .





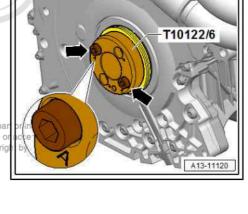
- Fit guide piece T10122/6- onto crankshaft.
- Bolt guide piece to crankshaft through securing points -A- using bolts -arrows-.

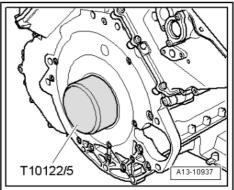


#### Caution

Risk of leaks if installed incorrectly.

- Slide oil seal onto crankshaft by hand to prevent sealing os lip on oil seal from folding over ised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
- Slide oil seal over guide piece T10122/6- onto crankshaft by hand.
- Press in oil seal evenly all round using thrust piece -T10122/5- .
- Remove guide piece T10122/6- .
- Check that oil seal and its sealing lip are correctly seated. If sealing lip is partially folded over, repeat procedure with a new oil seal.
- Install drive plate
   ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74 .







#### Renewing needle bearing in drive plate 2.6



Note

The needle bearing in the drive plate is only fitted in vehicles with manual gearbox or with multitronic gearbox 0AW.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Thrust plate - VW 402-

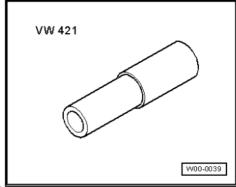


♦ Tube - VW 418 A-

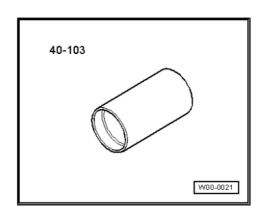


◆ Tube - VW 421-



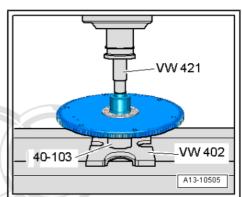


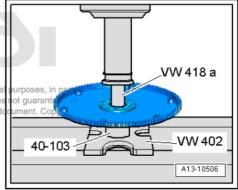
## ◆ Support - 40-103-



#### Procedure

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove drive plate
   ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74
- Place support 40-103- under drive plate when pressing out and pressing in needle bearing.
- Use tube VW 421- and workshop press and press out needle bearing.
- · Smaller diameter of tube -VW 421- faces drive plate.
- Carefully press in needle bearing as far as stop, using tube -VW 418 A- and workshop press.
- Installation position: closed side of needle bearing faces engine.





#### 3 Crankshaft

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view crankshaft", page 81
- ⇒ "3.2 Crankshaft dimensions", page 85
- ⇒ "3.3 Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft", page 85
- ⇒ "3.4 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft", page 85

#### 3.1 Exploded view - crankshaft



Note

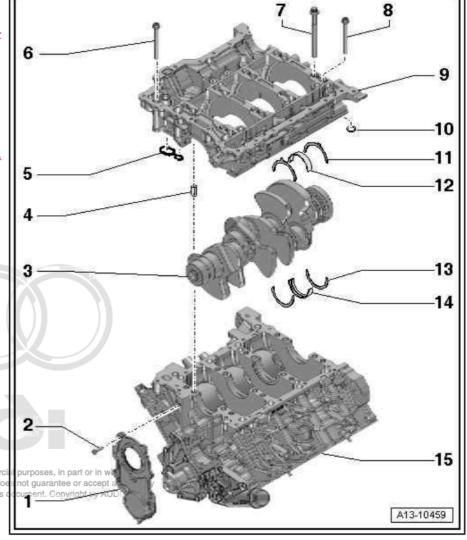
When performing assembly work, secure engine to engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-*⇒ "1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support", page 41* .

- 1 Sealing flange (pulley end)
  - Renewing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)", page 68
- 2 Bolt
  - □ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Sealing flange (pulley end) - tightening torque and sequence" page 66
- 3 Crankshaft
  - ☐ Measuring axial clear-⇒ "3.3 Measuring axial clearance of crank-shaft", page 85
  - Measuring radial clearance
    - ⇒ "3.4 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft", page 85
  - Crankshaft dimensions ⇒ "3.2 Crankshaft dimensions", page 85
- 4 Dowel sleeve
  - □ 4x
  - Inserting in retaining frame

Protected by copyright is an including in a permitted unless and inc with respect to position of dowel ation in this

sleeves", page 83

- 5 Seal
  - Renew
- 6 Bolt
  - ☐ For sealing surfaces: retaining frame to cylinder block
  - Differing bolt lengths and bolt heads
  - □ Renew
  - ☐ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Installing retaining frame"", page 84



7 - Bo	olt
	Long, large collar
	For retaining frame (inner row)
	Renew
	Tightening torque and sequence <u>⇒ Fig. ""Installing retaining frame"", page 84</u>
8 - Bo	olt
	Short, small collar
	For retaining frame (outer row)
	Renew
	Tightening torque and sequence <u>⇒ Fig. "'Installing retaining frame""</u> , page 84
9 - Re	etaining frame
	With valve for oil pressure control - N428- ⇒ Fig. "" Valve for oil pressure control -N428- "", page 83
	To remove, detach guide rail ⇒ Item 1 (page 111) for drive chain for valve gear
	Applying sealant ⇒ Fig. ""Applying sealant to retaining frame, position of dowel sleeves" , page 83
	Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control - N428- ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428 ", page 214
10 - S	Seal
	Renew
11 - Pri	Ministry coasing Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not milited unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability wonter a crankshaft bearingment. Copyright by AUDI AG.
	Installation position: oil groove faces outwards
	Make sure it engages in retaining frame
12 - B	Bearing shell
	For retaining frame (without oil groove)
	Renew used bearing shells
	Note installation position
	Install new bearing shells for retaining frame with correct coloured markings ⇒ Fig. "'Matching crankshaft bearing shells to bearings in retaining frame"", page 84
13 - T	hrust washer
	Only fitted on 3rd crankshaft bearing
	Installation position: oil groove faces outwards
	Make sure it engages in retaining frame
14 - B	Bearing shell
	For cylinder block (with oil groove)
	Renew used bearing shells
	Note installation position
	Install new bearing shells for the cylinder block with the correct coloured markings ⇒ Fig. ""Matching crankshaft bearing shells to bearings in cylinder block"", page 84
15 - C	Cylinder block

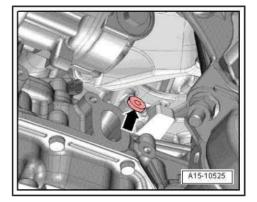
Plug for "TDC" marking - tightening torque



Note

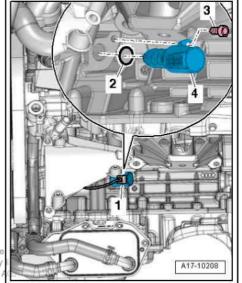
Fit new O-ring.

Tighten plug -arrow- to 14 Nm.



Valve for oil pressure control - N428-

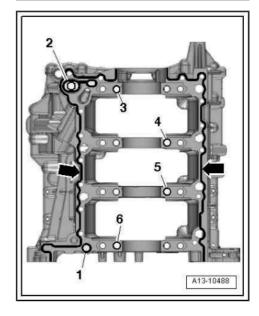
- Electrical connector
- 2 O-ring renew
- 3 -Bolt, 9 Nm
- Valve for oil pressure control N428-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whol permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI

Applying sealant to retaining frame, position of dowel sleeves

- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.
- Apply sealant beads -arrows- onto clean sealing surfaces of retaining frame as shown in illustration.
- The groove on the sealing surface must be completely filled with sealant.
- The beads of sealant must project 1.5 ... 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.
- Fit seals -1- and -2-.
- Check that dowel sleeves -3 ... 6- are inserted in retaining frame at positions shown in illustration.



#### Installing retaining frame

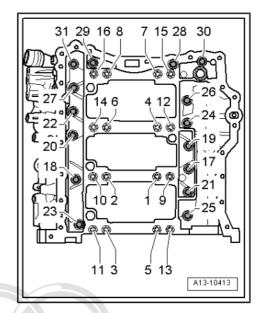


#### Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Install long bolts in inner row on retaining frame.
- Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

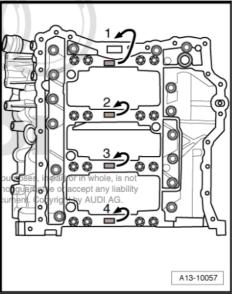
Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 16-	50 Nm
2.	-1 16-	Turn 90° further
3.	-17 31-	20 Nm
4.	-17 31-	Turn 90° further



#### Matching crankshaft bearing shells to bearings in cylinder block

- Bearing shells of the correct thickness are matched to the bearings in the cylinder block at the factory. Coloured dots on the side of the bearing shells are used to identify the bearing shell thickness.
- The allocation of the bearing shells to the bearing positions in the cylinder block is indicated by a code letter at the relevant bearing on the retaining frame.

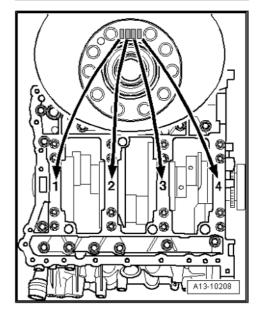
Code letter on retaining frame	Colour coding of bearing
R =	Red
G =	permitted unless au <b>frellow</b> by AUDI AG. AUDI
B =	with respect to the correctness of information in
S =	Black



#### Matching crankshaft bearing shells to bearings in retaining frame

- Bearing shells of the correct thickness are matched to the bearings in the retaining frame at the factory. Coloured dots on the side of the bearing shells are used to identify the bearing shell thickness.
- The allocation of the bearing shells to the bearing positions in the retaining frame is indicated by a sequence of letters on the quence stands for bearing "1", the second letter for bearing "2", etc.

Letter on crankshaft	Colour coding of bearing
R =	Red
G =	Yellow
B =	Blue
S =	Black





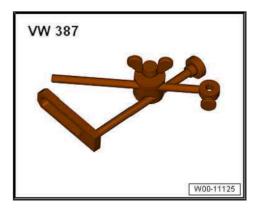
#### 3.2 Crankshaft dimensions

Honing di- mension	Main bearing journal Ø mm	Conrod journal Ø mm
Basic dimen-	58.000 - 0.022	54.000 - 0.022
sion	- 0.042	- 0.042

#### 3.3 Measuring axial clearance of crankshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



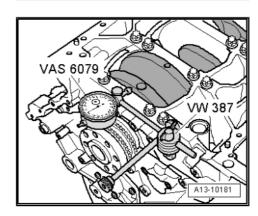
VAS 6079

Dial gauge - VAS 6079-



#### Procedure

- Secure dial gauge VAS 6079- with universal dial gauge bracket VW 387- to cylinder block as shown in illustration.
- Protected by copyright copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
- permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability will Press crankshaft against dial gauge by hand and set gauge to "0".
- Push crankshaft away from dial gauge and read off value.
- Axial clearance: 0.15 ... 0.25 mm



#### 3.4 Measuring radial clearance of crankshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Plastigauge

#### Procedure

Remove retaining frame and clean bearing journals.

W00-11309

- Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or in the bearing shell.
- The Plastigauge must be positioned in the centre of the bearing shell.
- Fit retaining frame, secure with old bolts and tighten to final torque <u>⇒ page 81</u> without rotating crankshaft.
- Remove retaining frame again.
- Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

#### Radial clearance:

New: 0.015 ... 0.055 mm.

Wear limit: 0.080 mm.



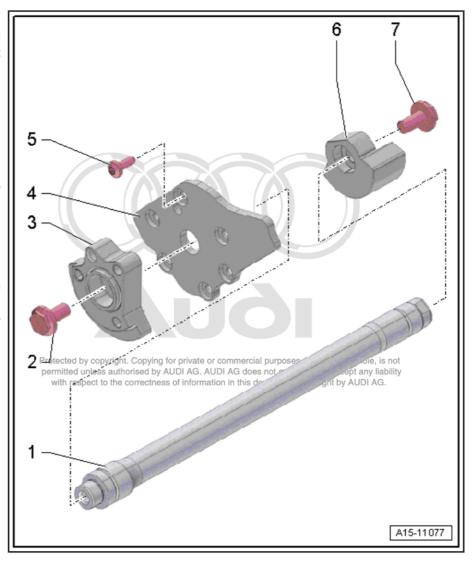


#### 4 Balance shaft

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view balance shaft", page 87
- ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft", page 87

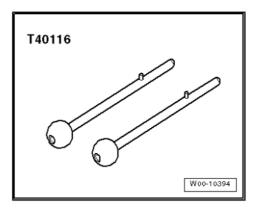
#### 4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft

- 1 Balance shaft
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft", <u>page 87</u>
- 2 Bolt
  - □ 60 Nm
- 3 Balance weight (gearbox end)
  - Can only be fitted on balance shaft in one position.
- 4 Bearing plate
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 13 Nm
- 6 Balance weight (pulley end)
  - Can only be fitted on balance shaft in one position.
- 7 Bolt
  - □ 60 Nm



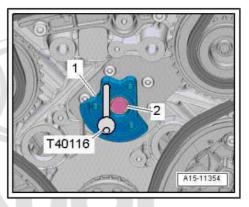
#### 4.2 Removing and installing balance shaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required



#### Removing

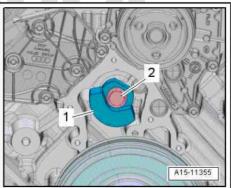
- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove sealing flange (pulley end)
   ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)",
   page 68 .
- Remove timing chain cover (bottom)
   ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)",
   page 102 .
- Remove drive chain for auxiliary drives
   ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127.
- Use locating pin -T40116- to lock balance weight -1- in position at rear of engine.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach balance weight from balance shaft.



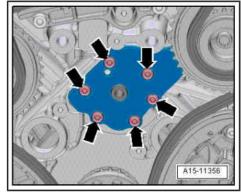
Unscrew bolt -2- (counterhold balance weight -1- with a suitable pin) and detach balance weight at front of engine from balance shaft.

Protected by copyright. Copying

permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctnes



- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bearing plate for balance shaft at rear of engine.
- Pull balance shaft to rear out of cylinder block.



#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Crankshaft -1- locked in "TDC" position with locking pin -T40069-.



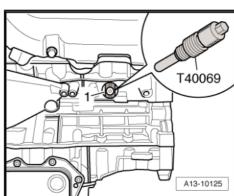
#### Note

Balance weights can only be fitted on balance shaft in one posi-

- Install drive chain for auxiliary drives ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127.
- Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102.
- Install sealing flange (pulley end) ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing sealing flange (pulley end)", page 68.

#### **Tightening torques**

♦ ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - balance shaft", page 87





#### 5 Pistons and conrods

- ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view pistons and conrods", page 90
- ⇒ "5.2 Removing and installing pistons", page 92
- ⇒ "5.3 Checking pistons and cylinder bores", page 93
- ⇒ "5.4 Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings", page 94

#### 5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods



Note

- All bearing and running surfaces must be oiled before assembling.
- Oil spray jet for piston cooling ⇒ Fig. ""Oil spray jet for piston cooling"", page 92.

#### 1 - Bolts

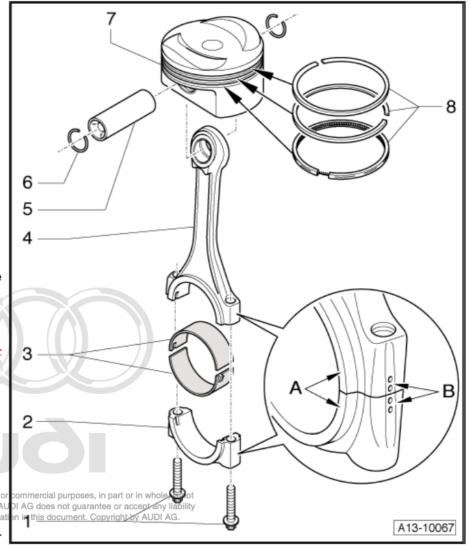
- □ Renew
- Use old bolts when measuring radial clearance
- ☐ Lubricate threads and contact surface
- ☐ 40 Nm +90°

#### 2 - Conrod bearing cap

- Mark cylinder and conrod allocation in colour -B-
  - ⇒ Fig. ""Marking conrods"", page 91
- □ Note when fitting bearing cap: the wide contact shoulder -A- must point towards same side on conrod and conrod bearing cap
- Installation position of conrod pairs
   ⇒ Fig. ""Conrod installation position"", page 92

#### 3 - Bearing shells

- ☐ Ensure that retaining lugs are securely seated.
- Renew used bearing shells
- P⊡ctThere are oversized vate or permit bearings available for AU with machined cranks narrormati conrod journals ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



Lugs on conrod bearings must be on the same side

#### 4 - Conrod

- Only renew as a complete set
- Mark cylinder and conrod bearing cap allocation in colour ⇒ Fig. ""Marking conrods"", page 91



ч	installation position of confod pairs $\Rightarrow$ Fig. "Confod installation position", page 92
	Axial clearance for each conrod pair (when new): 0.20 0.45 mm
	Measuring radial clearance ⇒ "5.4 Checking radial clearance of conrod bearings", page 94
5 - Pi	ston pin
	Removing and installing ⇒ "5.2 Removing and installing pistons", page 92
6 - C	irclip
	Renew
7 - Pi	ston
	Note cylinder bank allocation markings ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of pistons"", page 91
	Mark installation position and cylinder number ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of pistons"", page 91
	Removing and installing ⇒ "5.2 Removing and installing pistons", page 92
	Renew piston if cracking is visible on piston crown or piston skirt
	Checking pistons and cylinder bores ⇒ "5.3 Checking pistons and cylinder bores", page 93
8 - Pi	ston rings
	Measuring ring gap <del>⇒ Fig. ""Measuring piston ring gap"" , page 94</del>
	Measuring ring-to-groove clearance <u>⇒ Fig. ""Measuring ring-to-groove clearance"", page 94</u>
	Use piston ring pliers (commercially available) to remove and install
	Installation position: marking "TOP" or side with lettering faces towards piston crown
	Offset gaps by 120°

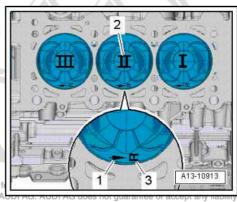
#### Installation position of pistons



#### Caution

Do not damage the coating of the piston crown.

♦ If you intend to re-install used pistons, mark the cylinder number on the piston crown using paint. Do not attempt to mark the piston crown with a centre punch or by making a notch or similar.



#### Installation position:

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by

- Arrows on piston crowns point to pulley end with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- 2 -Markings must be made indicating cylinder allocation
- Cylinder allocation markings: "R" = right, "L" = left

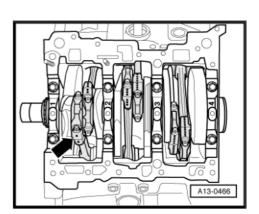
#### Marking conrods



#### Note

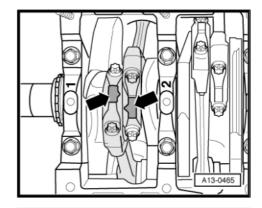
Only renew conrods as a complete set.

Use a coloured pen to mark matching conrods and conrod bearing caps with cylinder numbers -arrow- for re-installation.



#### Conrod installation position

The cast lugs -arrows- on the ground surfaces of the conrod pairs "1 and 2", "3 and 4", and "5 and 6" must face each other.



#### Oil spray jet for piston cooling

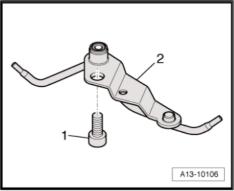
- Apply locking fluid to bolt and tighten to 9 Nm; for locking fluid refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- 2 -Oil spray jet with spray nozzle valve



#### Caution

Risk of damage to oil spray jets.

- Do not bend oil spray jets.
- Always renew bent oil spray jets.



#### 5.2 Removing and installing pistons

Special tools and workshop equipment required

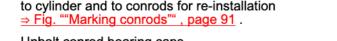
♦ Drift - VW 222 A-



Piston ring clamp, commercially available

#### Removing

- Engine secured to engine and gearbox support VAS 6095-⇒ "1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support", page
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Remove cylinder head Remove cylinder nead permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability sets authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability page. 135 or to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Remove sump (top section) ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)", page 199 .
- Mark installation position and matching of conrod bearing caps to cylinder and to conrods for re-installation ⇒ Fig. ""Marking conrods"", page 91.
- Unbolt conrod bearing caps.







Pull out pistons upwards with conrods.



Note

If piston pin is difficult to remove, heat piston to approx. 60 °C.

- Take circlip out of piston pin boss.
- Use drift VW 222 A- to drive out piston pin.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Oil running surfaces of bearing shells.

Install pistons using piston ring clamp.

Protected by conviright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Installation position: nless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Pistons ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of pistons"", page 91
- Conrods ⇒ Fig. ""Conrod installation position"", page 92
- Install conrod bearing caps according to markings.
- Install sump (upper section) ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)", page 199.
- Install cylinder head ⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing cylinder head - camshafts with assembly clearance feature", page 136.

#### Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ "5.1 Exploded view - pistons and conrods", page 90

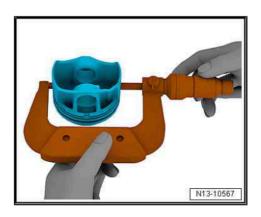
#### 5.3 Checking pistons and cylinder bores

#### Checking piston

- Using a micrometer (75 ... 100 mm), measure approx. 15 mm from the lower edge, perpendicular to the piston pin axis.
- Maximum deviation from nominal dimension: 0.03 mm.

Piston Ø mm		
	2.5 ltr. engine	2.8 ltr. engine
Nominal dimension	80.185 <sup>1)</sup>	84.49 <sup>1)</sup>

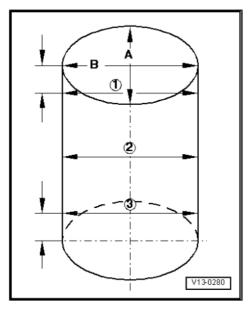
1) Dimensions including coating (thickness approx. 0.02 mm). The coating will wear down in service.



#### Measuring cylinder bore

- Use a cylinder gauge VAS 6078- to take measurements at 3 points in transverse direction -A- and in longitudinal direction . -В-.
- Maximum deviation from nominal dimension: 0.08 mm.

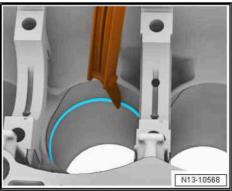
Cylinder bore Ø mm		
2.5 ltr. engine 2.8 ltr. engine		
Nominal dimension 80.210 <sup>1)</sup> 84.51 <sup>1)</sup>		
Measure at 50 mm into cylinder bore.		



#### Measuring piston ring gap

- Insert ring at right angle to cylinder wall from above and push down into lower cylinder opening approx. 15 mm from bottom of cylinder.
- To do so, use a piston without rings.

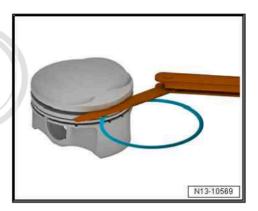
Piston ring	new mm	Wear limit mm
1st compression ring	0.20 0.35	0.80
2nd compression ring	0.5 0.7	1.0
Oil scraper ring	0.2 0.4	0.8



#### Measuring ring-to-groove clearance

Clean groove in piston before checking clearance.

Piston ring	new mm	Wear limit mm
Compression rings	0.02 0.08	0.20
Oil scraper ring	0.02 0.08	0.15



#### Checking radial clearance of conrod 5.4

bearings! unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### Special tools and workshop equipment required

#### ♦ Plastigauge

#### Procedure

- Remove conrod bearing cap.
- Clean bearing cap and bearing journal.
- Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or in the bearing shell.



- Fit conrod bearing cap and tighten with old bolts ⇒ Item 1 (page 90) . Do not rotate crankshaft.
- Remove conrod bearing cap again.
- Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

#### Radial clearance:

New: 0.010 ... 0.052 mm.

Wear limit: 0.120 mm.

Renew conrod bolts.

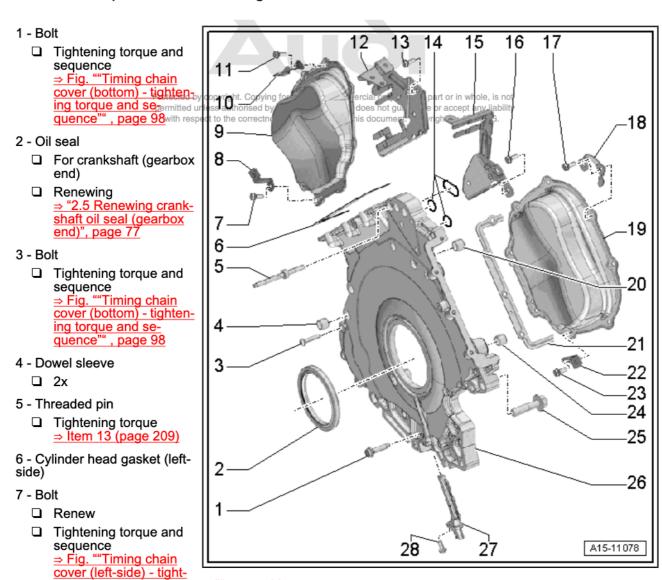


### 15 – Cylinder head, valve gear

#### 1 Timing chain cover

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view timing chain cover", page 96
- ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover", page 99

#### 1.1 Exploded view - timing chain cover



- 8 Bracket
  - For heat shield
- 9 Timing chain cover (left-side)
  - Removing and installing
     ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and right)", page 99
- 10 Bracket
  - For wiring harness
- 11 Bolt
  - □ Renew

ening torque and sequence", page 98



	Tightening torque and sequence  ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 98
12 - E	Bracket
	For electrical connectors for Lambda probes (left-side)
13 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 98
14 - C	Gaskets
	Renew
15 - E	Bracket
	For electrical connectors for Lambda probes (right-side)
16 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 98
17 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 98
18 - E	Bracket
	For electrical connectors
19 - 1	iming chain cover (right-side)
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and right)", page 99
20 - 5	Sleeve
	Prevents sealant from entering bolted connection between engine and gearbox
	Installation instructions <u>⇒ page 106</u>
21 - 0	Cylinder head gasket (right-side)
22 - E	Bracket
	For heat shield
23 - E	Bolt
_	Renew
	Tightening torque and sequence
	⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 98
24 - C	Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
	2x permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
25 - E	Bolt
	Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (bottom) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 98
26 - 1	iming chain cover (bottom)
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102
27 - E	Engine speed sender - G28-
_	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28", page 381
– 28 - E	

Timing chain cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence



#### Note

- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- The brackets -arrows A and B- are secured together with the timing chain cover (left-side).
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or Tighten bolts in 2 stages in the sequence shows does not guarantee or acceptable.

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 8-	5 Nm
2.	-1 8-	Turn 90° further

Timing chain cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence



#### Note

- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- ♦ The brackets -arrows A and B- are secured together with the timing chain cover (right-side).
- Tighten bolts in 2 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 8-	5 Nm
2.	-1 8-	Turn 90° further

Timing chain cover (bottom) - tightening torque and sequence

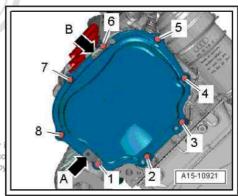


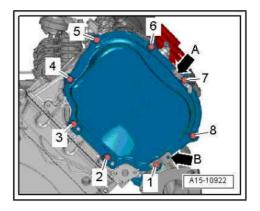
#### Note

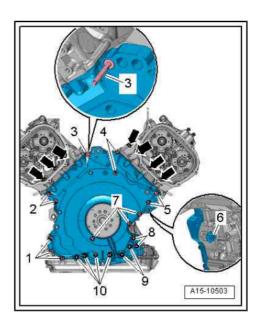
Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Tighten bolts in stages as follows:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-arrows-	3 Nm
2.	-1 10-	3 Nm in diagonal sequence
3.	-1, 2, 4, 5, 7-	Turn 90° further
4.	-arrows-	9 Nm
5.	-8, 9, 10-	8 Nm
6.	-8, 9, 10-	Turn 90° further
7.	-3-	16 Nm
8.	-6-	20 Nm
9.	-6-	Turn 180° further









#### 1.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover

⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and right)", page 99

⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102

#### 1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and right)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- ♦ Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64

Timing chain cover (left-side):

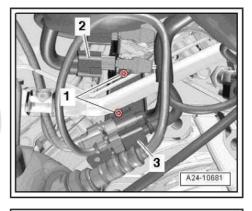
- Remove combination valve for secondary air (left-side) ⇒ "3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (leftside)", page 358 .
- Remove bolts -1- and move bracket with electrical connectors to one side.

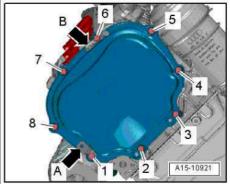


Note

Disregard items -2 and 3-.

- Unscrew bolts -1 ... 8- and detach brackets -arrows A, B-.
- Carefully release timing chain cover (left-side) from bonded joint and detach.





#### Timing chain cover (right-side):

- Remove combination valve for secondary air (right-side) ⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (rightside)", page 360
- Unplug electrical connectors and move wiring clear:
- 4 For Lambda probe G39-
- 5 For Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-



Note

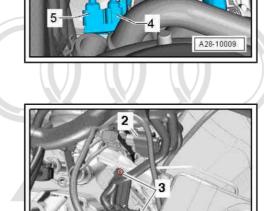
Disregard -items 1, 2 and 3-.

Remove bolts -3- and move bracket with electrical connectors to one side.



Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.



n whole, is not ept any liability AUDI AG.

A24-10682

Protected by cop permitted unles with respect

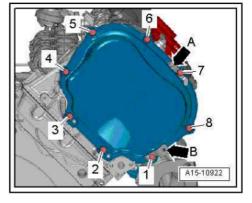
- Move wiring harness clear at timing chain cover (right-side).
- Unscrew bolts -1 ... 8- and detach brackets -arrows A, B-.
- Carefully release timing chain cover (right-side) from bonded joint and detach.

#### Installing



Note

- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- Fit new O-rings.





Remove old sealant from sealing surfaces.



#### Caution

Protect lubrication system against contamination.

◆ Cover exposed parts of the engine.



#### WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

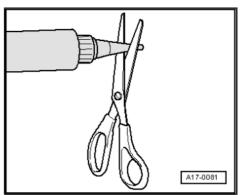
- Put on safety goggles.
- Remove remaining sealant on timing chain covers -1-, cylinder block and cylinder head using rotating plastic brush or similar.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

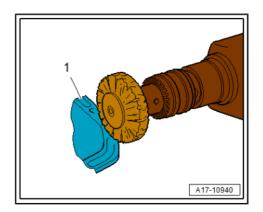


Note

Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle Ø approx. 2 mm).









#### Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.
- Apply sealant bead -arrow- onto clean sealing surface of timing chain cover as shown in illustration.
- Width of sealant bead: 2.5 mm.



#### Note

The timing chain covers must be installed within 5 minutes after applying sealant.

- Install timing chain cover (left-side) and tighten bolts ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 98.
- Install timing chain cover (right-side) and tighten bolts ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (right-side) - tightening torque and , page 98

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install combination valve for secondary air system: left-side ⇒ "3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (leftside)", page 358, right-side ⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (right-Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability side)", page 360
- Install engine cover panel respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (left-side) tightening torque and sequence", page 98
- ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (right-side) tightening torque and sequence", page 98

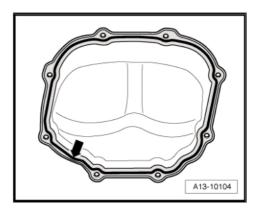
#### 1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

#### Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Engine oil drained ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411







## Note

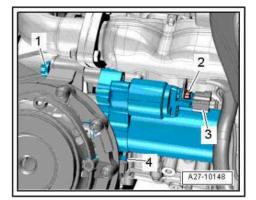
Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

- Remove drive plate ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74
- Remove timing chain covers (left and right) ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and right)", page 99 .
- Remove oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212.
- Unplug electrical connector -3- at starter (push retainer to the rear and press down release catch).
- Remove nut -2- for electrical wiring and detach starter.

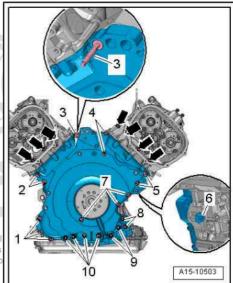


## Note

Disregard items -1 and 4-.



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Slacken bolts -1 ... 10- in diagonal sequence and remove.
- Carefully release timing chain cover (bottom) from bonded joint and remove cover.
- Press crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end) out of timing chain cover (bottom).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe with respect to the correctness of information in this do

## Installing



Note

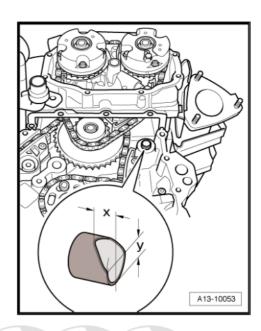
Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Pull dowel sleeve at top right out of cylinder block.
- Bevel the dowel sleeve with a file, as illustrated.
- Dimension -x- = 6.5 mm.
- Dimension -y- = 8 mm.
- Fit dowel sleeve on cylinder block in such a way that the bevelled side points upwards.



Note

Bevelling the dowel sleeve makes it easier to fit the timing chain cover (bottom) with the cylinder head installed.





#### Caution

Protect lubrication system against contamination.

♦ Cover exposed parts of the engine.

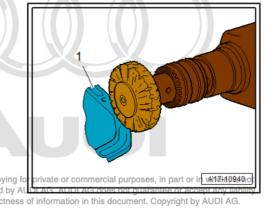


# WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

◆ Put on safety goggles.

Protected by copyright. Copyright permitted unless authorised with respect to the correct



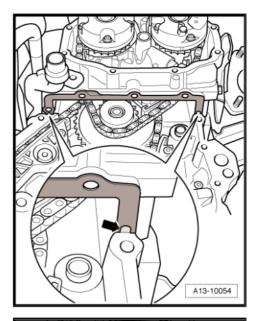
- Remove remaining sealant on timing chain cover -1-, cylinder block and cylinder head using rotating plastic brush or similar.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.
- Before installing gearbox, remove residue from threaded holes for engine/gearbox bolts in cylinder block using a thread tap.

Clean old sealant from holes -arrow- in cylinder head gaskets.



Note

With the cylinder head installed the holes in the cylinder head gasket are only half visible.





Caution

Avoid damage to cylinder head gasket.

 Only bend the ends of the cylinder head gaskets slightly and do not kink.



Note

If the cylinder head gasket has been bent and kinked it must be renewed.

- Carefully bend the ends of the cylinder head gaskets down very slightly -arrows-, just far enough to be made a commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not very slightly -arrows-, just far enough to be made a commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not very slightly -arrows-, just far enough to be made a commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not very slightly -arrows-, just far enough to be made a commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not very slightly -arrows-, just far enough to be made a commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not very slightly -arrows-. upper sealing surface on the cylinder head gasket and cylinder of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Clean cylinder head gaskets (top and bottom); they must be free of oil and grease.



Note

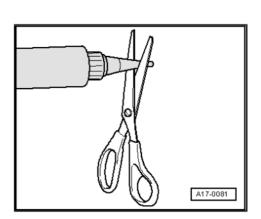
Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle  $\varnothing$  approx. 2 mm).



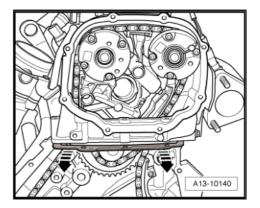
Note

The sealant must be applied at several points on the engine as described below.



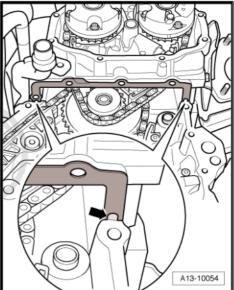
A13-10140

- Apply a small amount of sealant to sealing surfaces of cylinder head gaskets (top and bottom). To do so, you again have to bend cylinder head gaskets down very slightly -arrows-.
- Use a flat object (e.g. a feeler gauge) to apply sealant to the area between cylinder head and gasket.



Clean holes -arrow- in cylinder head gaskets and fill them with sealant.





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in par permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or



# Caution

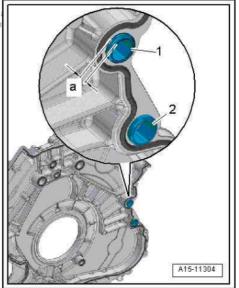
Risk of sealant entering hole for gearbox bolt.

- ♦ Appropriate sleeve -1- ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue must be fitted before installing timing chain cover (bottom).
- Projection of sleeve -a- = 3 mm above the sealing surface.



## Note

Sleeves -1- and -2- have different diameters and are not interchangeable.







#### Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.
- Apply sealant beads -1 ... 4- onto the clean sealing surfaces of the timing chain cover (bottom) as illustrated.
- The groove on the sealing surface must be completely filled with sealant.
- The beads of sealant must project 1.5 ... 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.
- Apply sealant -2- in a continuous bead as shown in illustration (although groove is not continuous).



## Note

The timing chain cover must be installed within 5 minutes after, in part or in whole, is not applying sealant. permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

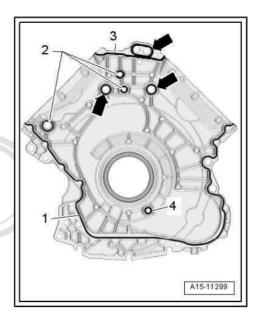
- Insert seals -arrows- in grooves on timing chain cover (bottom).
- Fit timing chain cover (bottom), guiding it towards the sealing surface on cylinder block and cylinder head at an angle and from below.
- Take care not to damage the cylinder head gaskets when fitting the cover.
- Tighten bolts for timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (bottom) - tightening torque and sequence", page 98.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end) ⇒ "2.5 Renewing crankshaft oil seal (gearbox end)", page 77.
- Install oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212.
- Install timing chain covers (left and right) ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and <u>right)", page 99</u>.
- Install drive plate ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing drive plate", page 74
- Fill with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Timing chain cover (bottom) tightening torque and sequence", page 98
- ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Starter; Exploded view starter



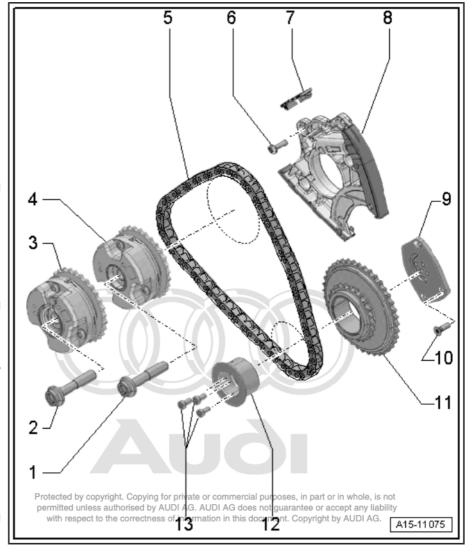
#### 2 Chain drive

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view camshaft timing chains", page 108
- ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view drive chain for valve gear", page 111
- ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 113
- ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain", page 124
- ⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing drive chain for valve gear",
- ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127

#### 2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains

Camshaft timing chain (left-side)

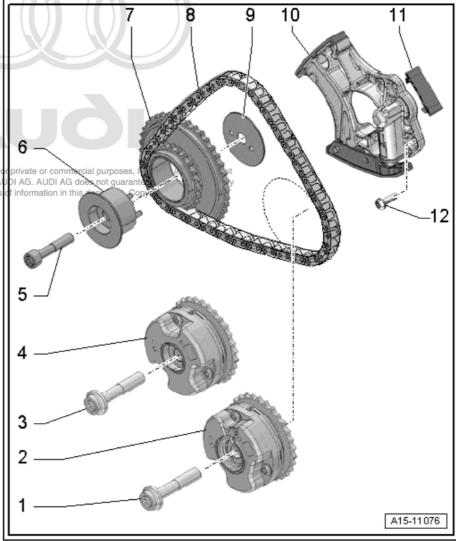
- 1 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ 80 Nm +90°
- 2 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ 80 Nm +90°
- 3 Camshaft adjuster
  - For exhaust camshaft
  - □ Identification: "EX"
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- 4 Camshaft adjuster
  - For inlet camshaft
  - □ Identification: "IN"
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- 5 Camshaft timing chain (leftside)
  - Mark direction of rotation for re-installation with a paint marker
  - □ Removing from camshafts ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114



- 6 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 7 Slide
- 8 Chain tensioner
  - ☐ For camshaft timing chain (left-side)
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- 9 Bearing plate
  - ☐ For drive chain sprocket
- 10 Bolt
  - ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 7 (page 111)
- 11 Drive chain sprocket
  - ☐ For camshaft timing chain (left-side)
- 12 Bearing mounting
  - ☐ For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (left-side)
- 13 Bolts
  - ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 4 (page 111)

# Camshaft timing chain (right-side)

- 1 Bolt
  - Renew
  - 80 Nm +90°
- 2 Camshaft adjuster
  - □ For exhaust camshaft
  - □ Identification: "EX"
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- permitted unless authorised by 3 - Bolt with respect to the correctnes
  - □ Renew
  - □ 80 Nm +90°
- 4 Camshaft adjuster
  - For inlet camshaft
  - ☐ Identification: "IN"
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
- 5 Bolt
  - □ Tightening torque ⇒ Item 3 (page 111)
- 6 Bearing mounting
  - For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)
  - Asymmetric version
  - Installation position ⇒ Fig. "Installation position: bearing mounting



for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)"", page 112

7 -	Dri	ve chain sprocket
	ב	For camshaft timing chain (right-side)
		Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position: bearing mounting for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)"", page 112
B -	Ca	mshaft timing chain (right-side)
	ב	Mark direction of rotation for re-installation with a paint marker
	ב	Removing from camshafts ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114
Ţ	<b>1</b>	Removing and installing ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain", page 124
9 -	Thi	rust washer
Ţ	ב	For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)
Ţ	ב	Asymmetric version
		Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position: bearing mounting for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)"", page 112
10 -	- C	hain tensioner
Ţ	ב	For camshaft timing chain (right-side)
C	ב	Removing and installing <u>⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114</u>
11 -	- S	lide
12 -	- B	olt
Г	<b>1</b>	9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

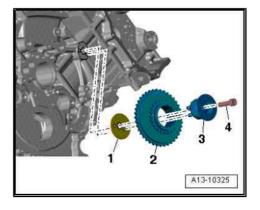
#### 2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for valve gear

1 - Guide rail 10 2 - Bolt □ Renew ☐ 10 Nm +90° 3 - Bolt Protected by copyr □ Renew permitted unless a or acce yright by AUDÍ AG with respect to ☐ 30 Nm +90° 4 - Bolts □ Renew □ 5 Nm +90° 12 5 - Bearing mounting ☐ For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (left-side) 3 6 - Drive chain sprocket □ For camshaft timing 13 chain (left-side) 7 - Bolt □ Renew 14 □ 8 Nm +45° 8 - Bearing plate 15 □ For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (left-side) Asymmetric version 16 9 - Drive chain For timing drive Before removing, mark 18 A15-11071 running direction with paint □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing drive chain for valve gear", page 125 10 - Guide rail 11 - Bolt Renew ☐ 10 Nm +90° 12 - Thrust washer Asymmetric version Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position: bearing mounting for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)"", page 112 13 - Drive chain sprocket ☐ For camshaft timing chain (right-side) 14 - Bearing mounting ☐ For drive chain sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side) Asymmetric version Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position: bearing mounting for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)"", page 112

- 15 Seal
  - □ Renew
- 16 Chain tensioner
- 17 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 18 Crankshaft

Installation position: bearing mounting for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)

- Dowel pins in bearing mounting -3- for drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side) must engage in drillings in thrust washer -1- and in cylinder block drillings.
- 2 Drive sprocket for camshaft timing chain (right-side)



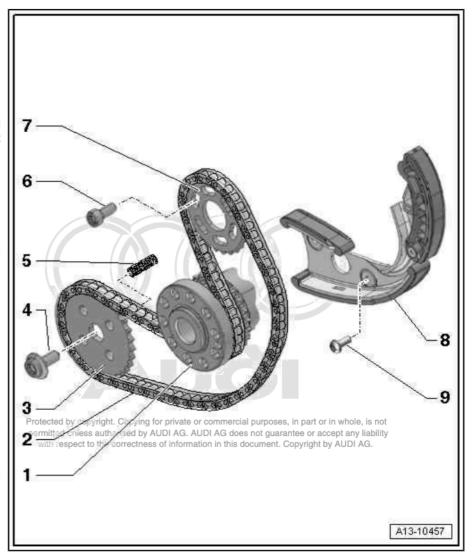


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### 2.3 Exploded view - drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump

- 1 Crankshaft
- 2 Drive chain
  - For auxiliary drives
  - Mark direction of rotation for re-installation with a paint marker
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127
- 3 Drive chain sprocket
  - ☐ For oil pump
  - ☐ Installation position: Side with lettering faces engine
- 4 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ 30 Nm +90°
- 5 Compression spring
- 6 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - ☐ 15 Nm +90°
- 7 Chain sprocket for balance shaft
  - ☐ Installation position: Side with lettering faces gearbox
- 8 Chain tensioner
  - With guide rail
- 9 Bolt
  - Renew
  - ☐ 10 Nm +45°



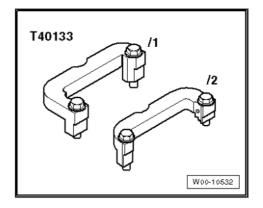
#### 2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts

Special tools and workshop equipment required

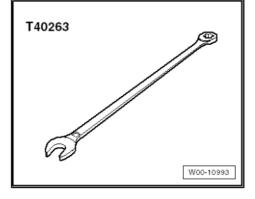


- Pin wrench 3212-
- Used oil collection and extraction unit VAS 6622A- or -V.A.G 1782-
- Socket T10035-
- Counterhold tool T10172- with -T10172/2-
- Locking bolt T40069-
- 2x Locking pin T40071-

♦ 2x Camshaft clamp - T40133-



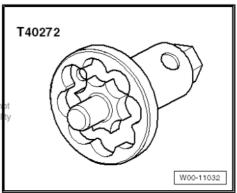
♦ Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



Turning-over tool - T40272-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liab with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



## Removing



# WARNING

Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

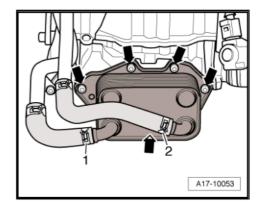
♦ Even when the ignition is switched off, the radiator fans can start up without warning due to accumulated heat in the engine compartment, etc.



#### Note

- In the following procedure the camshaft timing chains remain on the engine.
- ♦ Even when working on one cylinder head only, the procedure must still be carried out on both cylinder banks.

- Remove timing chain covers (left and right) ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and <u>right)", page 99</u>.
- Remove cylinder head cover (left and right) ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover",
- Remove noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Detach poly V-belt from tensioner ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66
- Place used oil collection and extraction unit VAS 6622A- un-
- Remove bolts -arrows- and tie up engine oil cooler to one side with coolant hoses -1, 2- attached.





#### WARNING

Risk of injury caused by refrigerant.

- The air conditioner refrigerant circuit must not be opened.
- Remove bolts -arrows- for air conditioner compressor.

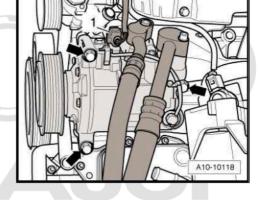


#### Caution

Danger of damage to refrigerant lines and hoses.

◆ Do NOT stretch, kink or bend refrigerant lines and hoses.

Detach air conditioner compressor from bracket and tie up on longitudinal member (left-side) with lines/wiring connected.



copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability



## Note

Disregard -item 1-.

- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.

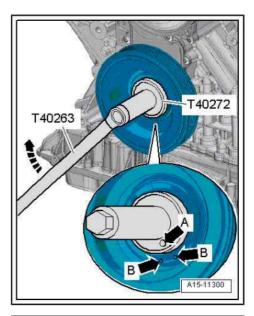


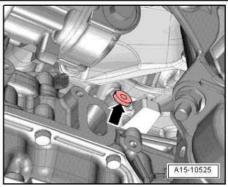
Note

If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Turn crankshaft to TDC in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- .



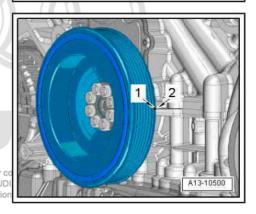


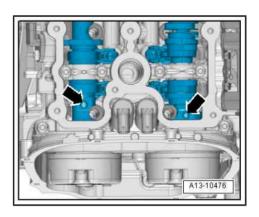




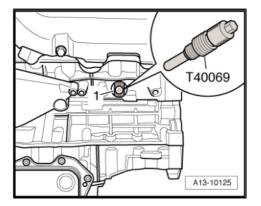
Note

- The bore provided for locking the crankshaft is difficult to see when the engine is installed.
- ◆ Therefore, turn the engine until the small notch -1- on the vibration damper is in line with the housing joint -2- between the cylinder block and the retaining frame on the left side (as seen in direction of travel). This makes it easier to screw in locking pin - T40069- .
- The marking on the vibration damper is only a visual aid of the analysis of the control of the vibration damper is only a visual aid of the analysis of the control of the exact "TDC" position can only be obtained by screwing in the locking pin - T40069- .
- The threaded holes -arrows- in the camshafts must face upwards.





Screw locking pin - T40069- into bore (tightening torque: 20 Nm); if necessary, turn crankshaft backwards and forwards slightly to fully centralise locking pin.

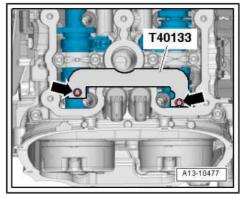


Fit camshaft clamps - T40133- onto both cylinder heads and tighten bolts -arrows- to 25 Nm.



## Note

The illustration shows the left-side cylinder head.



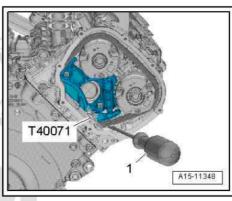
## Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

Press guide rail of chain tensioner for camshaft timing chain (right-side) inwards as far as the stop using a screwdriver -1-. Then lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40071-.



## Note

The chain tensioner is oil-damped and can therefore only be compressed slowly by applying constant pressure.



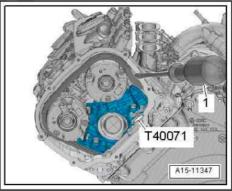
## Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

Press guide rail of chain tensioner for camshaft timing chain erolal pu (left-side) inwards as far as the stop using a screwdrive of 1 does not Then lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin - T40071-.



# Note

The chain tensioner is oil-damped and can therefore only be compressed slowly by applying constant pressure.





T40071

A15-11349

## Continued for both cylinder banks:



## Caution

Risk of damage to camshafts.

- ◆ Do NOT use camshaft clamp T40133- to counterhold when loosening camshaft adjuster bolt.
- Apply socket -T40269- to counterhold at corresponding camshaft adjuster and loosen bolt -1-.
- Mark position of camshaft adjusters with paint for re-installa-



#### Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to engine.

- ◆ Block off the opening in the valve timing housing with a clean cloth to prevent small items from dropping into the engine.
- Mark position of camshaft adjusters with paint for re-installation.



Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and detach both camshaft adjusters.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

## Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and detach both camshaft adjusters. Installing



## Note

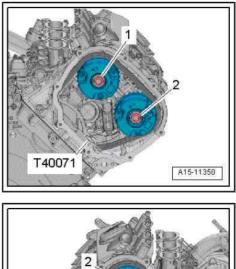
- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.



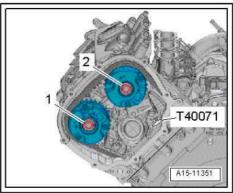
## Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

The crankshaft must not be at "TDC" at any cylinder when the camshafts are turned.



T40269



- Drive chain for valve gear installed ⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing drive chain for valve gear",
- Crankshaft locked in "TDC" position with locking pin -T40069-.



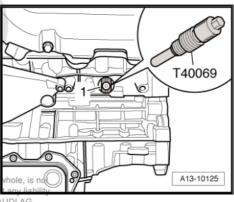
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or account

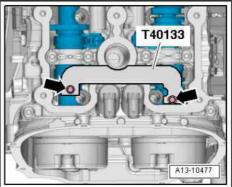
Camshaft clamps - T40133- installed on both cylinder heads and tightened to 25 Nm -arrows-.



Note

The illustration shows the left-side cylinder head.



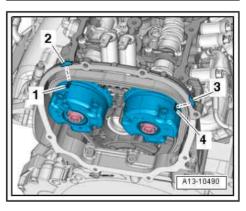




## Caution

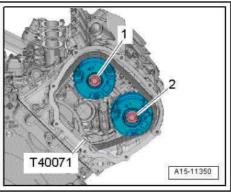
Risk of damage to engine.

When performing the following steps, make sure to fit camshaft adjusters so that the grooves -1- and -4- are aligned with the adjustment areas (ground surfaces) -2and -3-.



# Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

- Fit camshaft adjusters according to marks applied during removal.
- Fit timing chain onto drive chain sprocket and camshaft adjusters and fit bolts -1 and 2- without tightening.
- It should just be possible to turn both camshaft adjusters on the camshaft without axial movement.
- Remove locking pin T40071-.



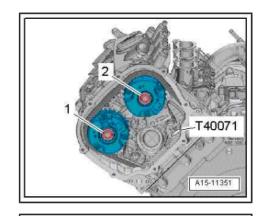


V.A.G 1332

A15-11352

## Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- Fit camshaft adjusters according to marks applied during removal.
- Fit timing chain onto drive chain sprocket and camshaft adjusters and fit bolts -1 and 2- without tightening.
- It should just be possible to turn both camshaft adjusters on the camshaft without axial movement.
- Remove locking pin T40071-.



## Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

- Fit socket -T40269- onto camshaft adjuster of exhaust camshaft.
- Apply torque wrench V.A.G 1332- with open ring spanner insert - V.A.G 1332/9- to socket -T40269- .
- Have a second mechanic apply a torque of 40 Nm to camshaft adjuster in direction of -arrow-.
- Tighten bolts as follows while keeping camshaft adjuster under tension:

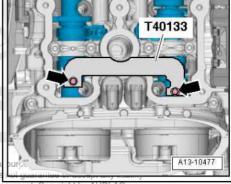
Stage	Bolt	Tightening torque
1.	-1-	At camshaft: 60 Nm
1.	-2-	At camshaft: 60 Nm

- Remove socket -T40269- .
- Remove camshaft clamp T40133- -arrows-.



## Note

The illustration shows the cylinder head on the left side.



T40269

V.A.G 1332/9

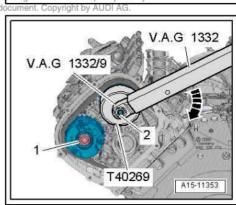
#### permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe with respect to the correctness of information in this of Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerce

- Fit socket -T40269- onto camshaft adjuster of inlet camshaft.
- Apply torque wrench V.A.G 1332- with open ring spanner insert - V.A.G 1332/9- to socket -T40269- .
- Have a second mechanic apply a torque of 40 Nm to camshaft adjuster in direction of -arrow-.
- Tighten bolts as follows while keeping camshaft adjuster under tension:

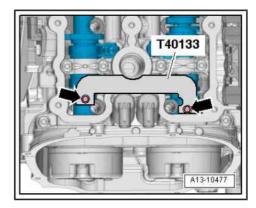
Stage	Bolt	Tightening torque
1.	-1-	At camshaft: 60 Nm
1.	-2-	At camshaft: 60 Nm

Remove socket -T40269- .





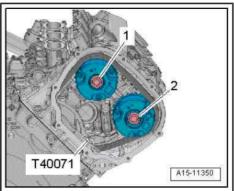
Remove camshaft clamp - T40133- -arrows-.



## Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

Tighten camshaft adjuster bolts on cylinder head (right-side) as follows:

Stage	Bolt	Tightening torque
2.	-1-	Tighten on camshaft to final tightening torque <u>⇒ Item 3 (page 109)</u>
2.	-2-	Tighten on camshaft to final tightening torque <u>⇒ Item 1 (page 109)</u>

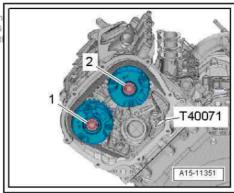


# Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com

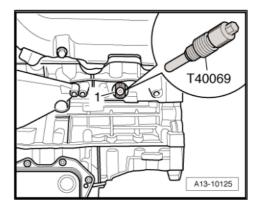
Tighten camshaft adjuster bolts on cylinder nead (left-side) as UDI AG follows:

Stage	Bolt	Tightening torque
2.	-1-	Tighten on camshaft to final tightening torque ⇒ Item 2 (page 108)
2.	-2-	Tighten on camshaft to final tightening torque <u>⇒ Item 1 (page 108)</u>



# Continued for both cylinder banks:

Remove locking pin - T40069- .

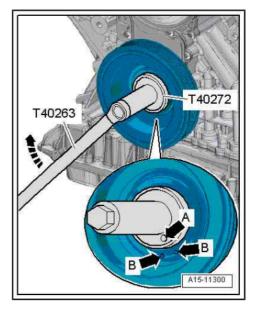


Turn crankshaft two rotations back to TDC in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- .

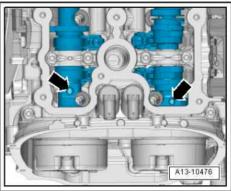


## Note

If you turn the crankshaft beyond "TDC" by mistake, turn it back approx. 30° and set to "TDC" again.

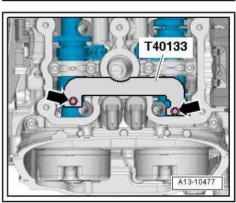


The threaded holes -arrows- in the camshafts must face upwards.



Fit camshaft clamps - T40133- onto both cylinder heads and tighten bolts -arrows- to 25 Nm.





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Screw the locking pin T40069- directly into the hole.
- The locking pin T40069- must engage in the locating hole in crankshaft -1-. If it does not, reset valve timing.
- Remove camshaft clamps from both cylinder heads.
- Remove locking pin T40069-.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install engine oil cooler ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203.
- Install poly V-belt ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66
- Install cylinder head covers ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161
- Install timing chain covers (left and right) ⇒ "1.2.1 Removing and installing timing chain covers (left and <u>right)", page 99</u> .

## Tightening torques

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view camshaft timing chains", page 108
- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view\_air.conditioner.compressor.drive.units not
- ⇒ Figvitti Plug for TDC marking tightening torque "right page 83g
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 2.5 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain

#### Removing

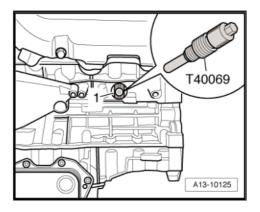
- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102.
- Remove timing chains from camshafts "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page

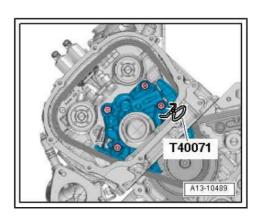


## Caution

If a used timing chain rotates in the opposite direction when it is refitted, this can cause breakage.

- Mark running direction of timing chains (left and right) with paint for re-installation. Do not attempt to mark the timing chain with a centre punch or by making a notch or similar.
- Remove locking pin T40071- and detach camshaft timing chain (left-side).







Remove bolts -1- and -2- and take off chain tensioner (rightside).

#### Installing



#### Note

- Note the correct installation position if the tensioning element has been removed from the chain tensioner: drilling in base of housing faces chain tensioner and piston faces tensioner rail.
- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.



#### Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

- The crankshaft must not be at "TDC" at any cylinder when the camshafts are turned.
- Position timing chain (left-side) as shown in the illustration (according to marks applied during removal).
- Press down guide rail of chain tensioner for timing chain (leftside) and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40071- .



#### Note

ed by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Distributed pries authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Fit chain tensioner on cylinder head (right-side) and position timing chain.
- Tighten bolts -1- and -2-.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

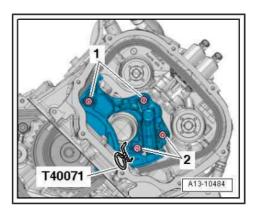
- Fit timing chains on camshafts "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page
- Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102.

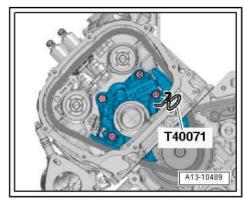
#### Tightening torques

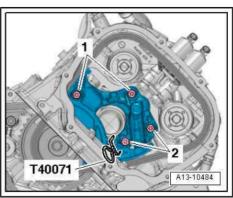
♦ ± "2.1 Exploded view - camshaft timing chains", page 108

#### 2.6 Removing and installing drive chain for valve gear

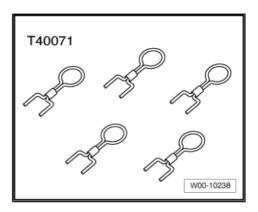
Special tools and workshop equipment required





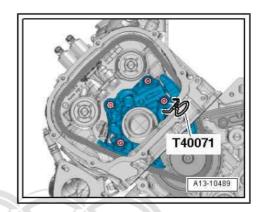


Locking pin - T40071-



## Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove timing chains ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain", page 124.
- Remove drive chain for auxiliary drives ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127
- Remove chain tensioner for camshaft timing chain (left-side).





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Press guide rail of chain tensioner for drive chain in direction of -arrow- and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin -T40071- .



#### Caution

If a used drive chain rotates in the opposite direction when it is refitted, this can cause breakage.

- ◆ Mark running direction of drive chain with paint for re-installation. Do not attempt to mark the drive chain with a centre punch or by making a notch or similar.
- Unscrew bolts -1- and remove guide rail.
- Remove bolts -2- and take off chain tensioner.
- Detach drive chain for valve gear.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



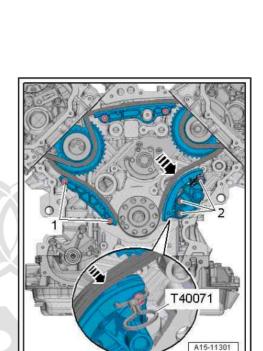
#### Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

- Position drive chain for valve gear onto drive chain sprockets (according to marks applied during removal).
- Install guide rail and tighten bolts -1-.
- Install chain tensioner and tighten bolts -2-.
- Press guide rail of chain tensioner for drive chain in direction of -arrow- and remove locking pin - T40071- .
- Install drive chain for auxiliary drives ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 127.
- Install camshaft timing chains ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing camshaft timing chain" page 124.
- Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)",

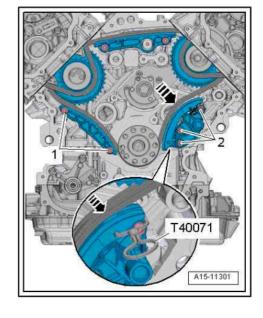
## Tightening torques

⇒ "2.2 Exploded view - drive chain for valve gear", page 111



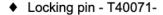
## Removing and installing drive chain it of the property of the 2.7 balance shaft and oil pump pess of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

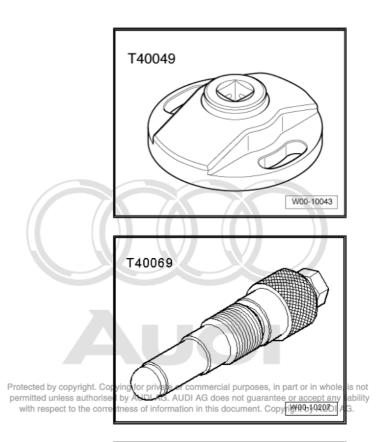


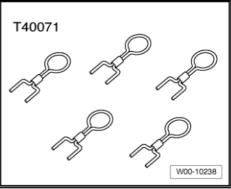
Key - T40049-

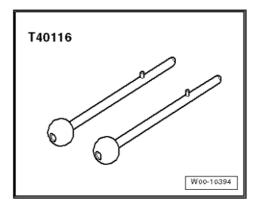
Locking pin - T40069-



Locating pins - T40116-







#### Removing

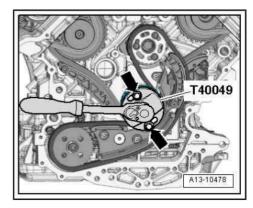
- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox.
- Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102



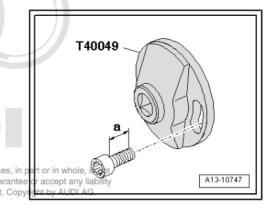
#### Caution

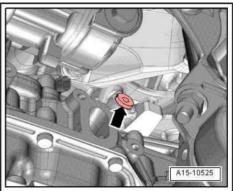
Risk of damage to drive chain if thread of bolt exceeds specified length.

- ♦ Use bolts with a maximum thread length -a- of 22 mm to attach key -T40049- .
- ♦ If no suitable bolts are available, position suitable washer (s) under bolt head so that remaining thread length does not exceed 22 mm.
- Attach key T40049- at rear end of crankshaft using 2 bolts -arrows-.



- Remove plug -arrow- for crankshaft "TDC" marking from cylinder block.
- Rotate crankshaft in normal direction of rotation to "TDC".

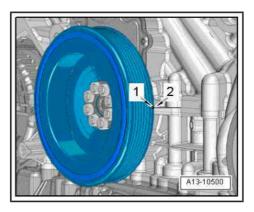


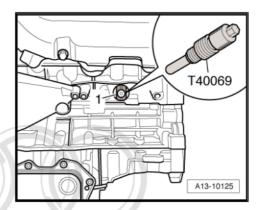




## Note

- The bore provided for locking the crankshaft is difficult to see when the engine is installed.
- Therefore, turn the engine until the small notch -1- on the vibration damper is in line with the housing joint -2- between the cylinder block and the retaining frame on the left side (as seen in direction of travel). This makes it easier to screw in locking pin - T40069-.
- The marking on the vibration damper is only a visual aid. The exact "TDC" position can only be obtained by screwing in the locking pin - T40069-.
- Screw locking pin T40069- into hole (20 Nm); if necessary, turn crankshaft -1- backwards and forwards slightly to fully centralise locking pin.





Press guide rail of chain tensioner in direction of -arrow- and lock chain tensioner by inserting locking pin - T40071- .



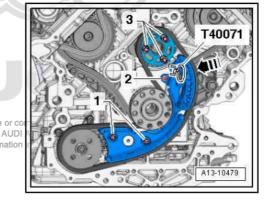
## Caution

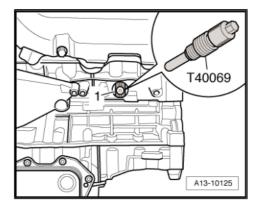
If a used drive chain rotates in the opposite direction when it is refitted, this can cause breakage.

- Mark running direction of drive chain with paint for re-installation. Do not attempt to mark the drive chain with a centre punch or by making a notch or similar.
- Unscrew bolts -3- and detach chain sprocket from balance
- Remove bolts -1- and -2- and take off chain tensioner with chain.



Crankshaft -1- locked in "TDC" position with locking pin -







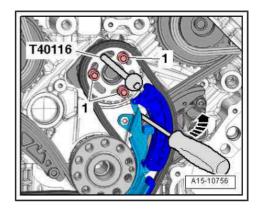
- Install chain tensioner with chain and balance shaft sprocket.
- Lock balance shaft in "TDC" position using locating pin -T40116-.
- The elongated holes in the balance shaft sprocket must be aligned centrally over the threaded holes in the balance shaft. If necessary move chain one tooth further.
- Tighten bolts for chain tensioner.
- Fit bolts -1- for chain sprocket without tightening.
- It should just be possible to turn the sprocket on the balance shaft without axial movement.
- Pull out locking pin T40071- to release chain tensioner.
- Press against guide rail of chain tensioner -arrow- using a screwdriver, and at the same time tighten bolts -1- securing chain sprocket.

Protected by Pull locating pinra T40116 rout of balance shaftole, is not permitted u

- with Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:
  - Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102 .

## Tightening torques

- ⇒ "2.3 Exploded view drive chain for balance shaft and oil pump", page 113
- ⇒ Fig. ""Plug for TDC marking tightening torque"", page 83



#### 3 Cylinder head

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view cylinder head", page 132
- ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing cylinder head", page 136
- ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161
- ⇒ "3.4 Checking compression", page 162

#### 3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head



Note

Illustration shows the cylinder head for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).

## 1 - Cylinder head gasket

- Renewing ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing cylinder head", page 136
- ☐ Installation position: part number must face cylinder head
- ☐ If renewed, change coolant and engine oil

#### 2 - Cylinder head

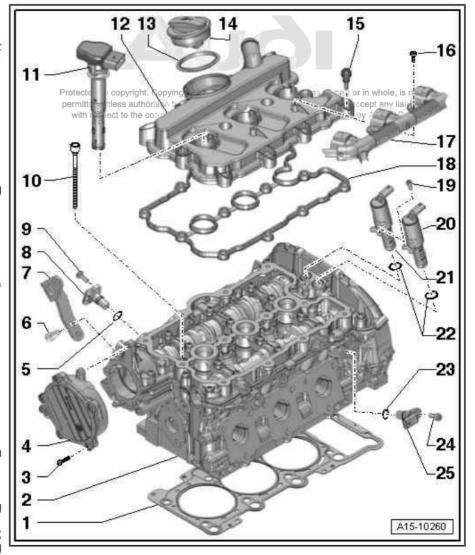
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 136
- ⇒ Fig. ""Camshafts with recesses for bolts"", page 135
- ⇒ Fig. ""Checking cylinder head for distortion" page 134
- ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head machining limit"", page 135
- ☐ If renewed, change coolant and engine oil

#### 3 - Bolt

□ Tightening torque ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 47; Vacuum system; Exploded view - vacuum pump

## 4 - Vacuum pump

- □ Removing and installing ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 47; Vacuum system; Removing and installing vacuum pump
- 5 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 20 Nm



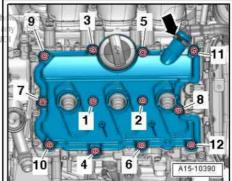


7 - Engine lifting eye
8 - Hall sender for inlet camshaft
☐ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side): Hall sender - G40-
☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): Hall sender 2 - G163-
□ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380
9 - Bolt
□ 9 Nm
10 - Bolt
<ul> <li>□ Renew</li> <li>□ Procedure for camshafts with assembly clearance feature</li> <li>⇒ Fig. ""Camshafts with recesses for bolts"", page 135</li> </ul>
◆ Loosening <del>⇒ page 141</del>
♦ Tightening ⇒ page 149
♦ Tighten in three stages:
40 Nm
Turn 90° further Turn 90° further □ Procedure for camshafts without assembly clearance feature ⇒ Fig. ""Camshafts with recesses for bolts"", page 135:
◆ Loosening <u>⇒ page 159</u>
◆ Tightening ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head with camshafts without assembly clearance feature - tightening torque and sequence"", page 135
11 - Ignition coil
☐ Removing and installing <u>⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 37</u>
12 - Cylinder head cover
Removing and installing ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161
13 - Gasket
□ Renew if damaged or leaking
14 - Filler cap
15 - Bolt  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability  Renew if gasket is damaged to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.  Tightening torque:
◆ ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 134
♦ ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence" , page 134
16 - Bolt
☐ Tightening torque ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - ignition system", page 371
17 - Connector rail  For ignition coils
18 - Gasket for cylinder head cover  Renew if damaged or leaking
19 - Bolt
□ 5 Nm
20 - Solenoid valve for camshaft control (exhaust side)
☐ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side): exhaust camshaft control valve 1 - N318-
☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-
☐ Removing and installing → "4.6 Removing and installing camebaft control valves" page 178

- 21 Solenoid valve for camshaft control (inlet side)
  - □ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side): camshaft control valve 1 N205-
  - ☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): camshaft control valve 2 N208-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing camshaft control valves", page 178
- 22 O-rings
  - □ Renew
- 23 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 24 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 25 Hall sender for exhaust camshaft
  - ☐ Cylinder bank 1 (right-side): Hall sender 3 G300-
  - ☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): Hall sender 4 G301-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380

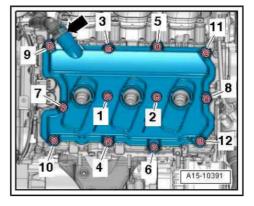
## Cylinder head cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence

- Tighten bolts in the sequence dy AVD12 to 9 Nimoes not guarantee or accept



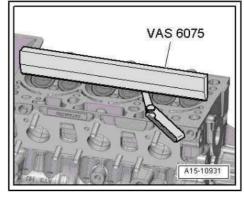
## Cylinder head cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence

- Tighten bolts in the sequence -1 ... 12- to 9 Nm.



## Checking cylinder head for distortion

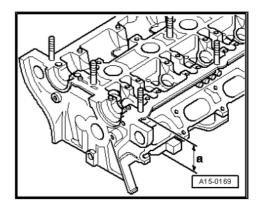
- Use straight edge 500 mm VAS 6075- and feeler gauge to measure cylinder head for distortion at several points.
- Max. distortion: 0.05 mm.



## Cylinder head machining limit

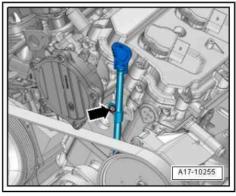
Machining of the cylinder head (surface grinding) is only permissible down to the minimum dimension -a-.

Minimum dimension: -a- = 139.20 mm



Guide tube for oil dipstick - tightening torque

- Tighten bolt -arrow- to 9 Nm.

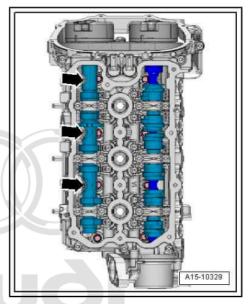


Camshafts with recesses for bolts



#### Note

- Camshafts with assembly clearance feature have recesses at the points marked with -arrows-. The cylinder head can be removed and installed without performing any additional work.
- Camshafts with no assembly clearance feature do not have these recesses. The camshafts must be removed before you can remove and install the cylinder head.



Cylinder head with camshafts without assembly clearance feature - tightening torque and sequence

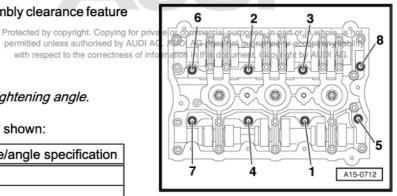


Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Tighten bolts in stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 8-	40 Nm
2.	-1 8-	Turn 90° further
3.	-1 8-	Turn 90° further



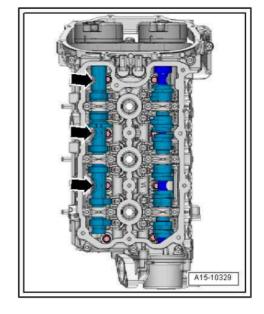
#### 3.2 Removing and installing cylinder head

- ⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing cylinder head camshafts with assembly clearance feature", page 136
- ⇒ "3.2.2 Removing and installing cylinder head camshafts without assembly clearance feature", page 156
- 3.2.1 Removing and installing cylinder head camshafts with assembly clearance feature



Note

Camshafts with assembly clearance feature have recesses at the points marked with -arrows-. The cylinder head can be removed and installed without performing any additional work.



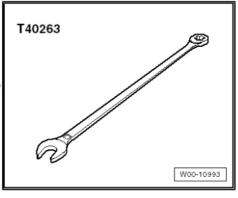


Special tools and workshop equipment required

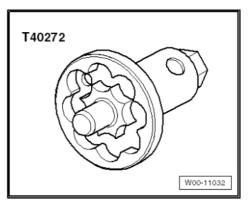
♦ Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabilit with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Turning-over tool - T40272-





## Removing

· Engine in vehicle.



## Note

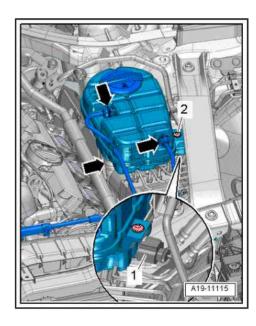
- The following chapter describes how to remove both cylinder heads together.
- ♦ If only one of the cylinder heads is to be removed, refer to the corresponding procedure described in this chapter.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.



## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure with prior to opening the system in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Reduce fuel pressure in high-pressure system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page
- Remove coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244
- Remove oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift retaining clips -arrows- and disconnect coolant hoses from coolant expansion tank. Remove coolant expansion tank.

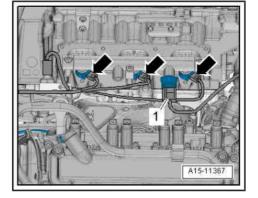


## Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

- Unplug electrical connectors at injectors -arrows- and at fuel pressure sender - G247- -item 1-.

### Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

- Remove intake manifold (bottom sections) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Unplug electrical connectors at injectors.



### Continued for all vehicles:

Unplug electrical connector -2- at temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- .



Note

Disregard -item 1-.

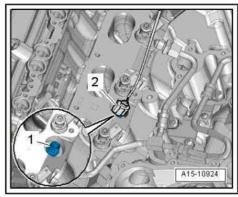
- Unplug electrical connectors on cylinder head (left-side):
- 1 For Hall sender 2 G163-
- 3 For inlet camshaft control valve 2 N208- and exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-
- 4 Hall sender 4 G301-
- Move electrical wiring harness to one side.

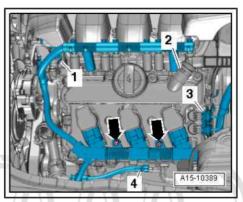


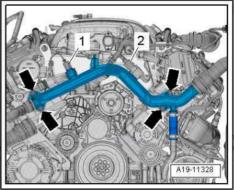
Note

-Item 2- and -arrows- can be disregarded.

- Unplug electrical connectors at engine (front).
- For coolant temperature sender G62-
- For solenoid for coolant circuit N492-
- Remove bolts -arrows- at coolant pipe (front).



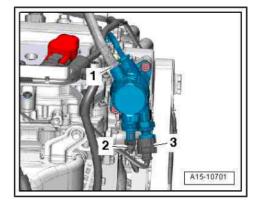




whole, is not pt any liability AUDI AG.

Protected by copy permitted unless with respect to

- Unscrew connection -1- and move fuel supply hose clear to one side.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.

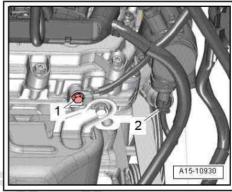


- Remove bolt -1- for earth wire on both sides.

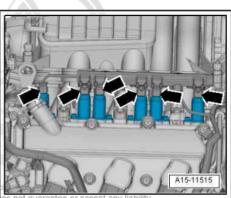


Note

Disregard -item 2-.

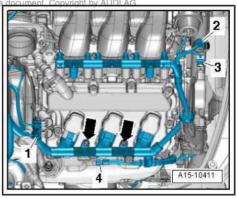


Unplug electrical connectors -arrows- (left and right) at cam actuators and move electrical wiring harness clear.

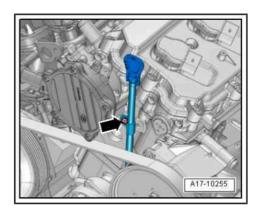


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG of

- Unplug electrical connectors on cylinder head (right-side):
- 1 For inlet camshaft control valve 1 N205- and exhaust camshaft control valve 1 - N318-
- 3 For Hall sender G40-
- 4 For Hall sender 3 G300-
- Move electrical wiring harness to one side.
- Remove cylinder head covers ⇒ page 161.



Remove bolt -arrow- and pull out guide tube for oil dipstick.

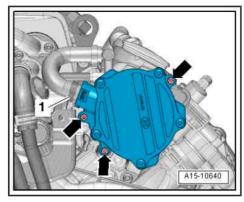


Release hose clip -1-, disconnect vacuum hose from vacuum pump and move vacuum hose clear.

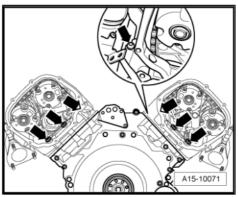


Note

Disregard -arrows-.



- Remove bolts -arrows- at rear of cylinder head.
- Cylinder head (left-side): 3 bolts
- Cylinder head (right-side): 4 bolts









## Note

- The cams on the inlet camshaft prevent access to some of the cylinder head bolts - in this example bolts -1- and -2-.
- Use a plastic wedge to press the slider on the camshaft in direction of -arrow A- to remove bolt -1-.
- Use a plastic wedge to press the slider on the camshaft in direction of -arrow B- to remove bolt -2-.



#### Caution

Risk of damage. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpos s, in part or in whole, is not ermitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua antee or accept any liability

♦ Move the sliders only when the rocker fingers are not unent der load from the cams (i.e. when they are in contact only with the base circle of the cam). For this reason it is important to keep to sequence described in the following when loosening the cylinder head bolts.

## Risk of breakage

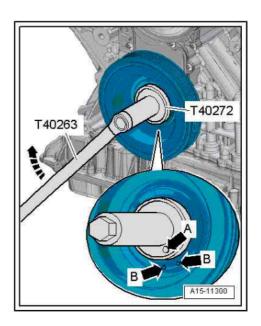
- Do not apply pressure to the thin webs when moving the sliders.
- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.

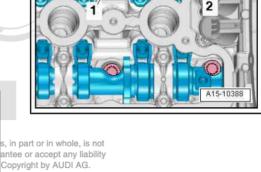


#### Note

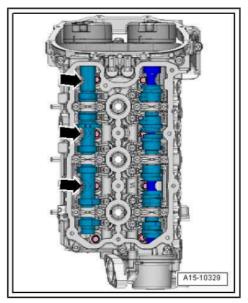
If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Use wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool -T40272- to turn crankshaft in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- until camshaft position shown in following illustration is attained.





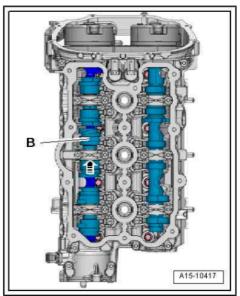
The recesses -arrows- on the exhaust camshaft must point towards the outside of the engine as shown in the illustration.



## Cylinder head (left-side):

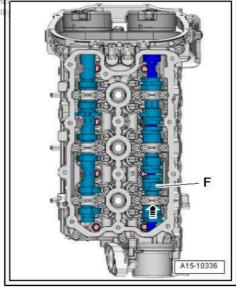
Press slider -B- as far as stop in direction of -arrow- (slider should not be under load).





Cylinder head (right-side) opying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability as a side of the commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability as a side of the commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability and accept any liability and liabi

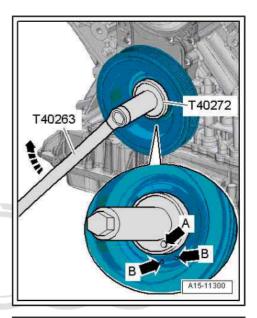
should not be under load).



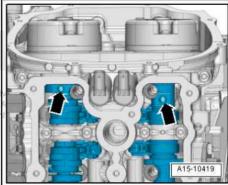


## Continued for both cylinder heads:

Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272-.



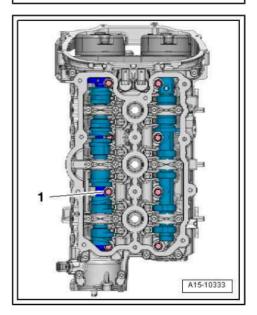
The threaded holes -arrows- in the camshafts must face upwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for p permitted unless authorised by AUD with respect to the correctness of

# Cylinder head (left-side):

- Unscrew bolt -1- and remove.

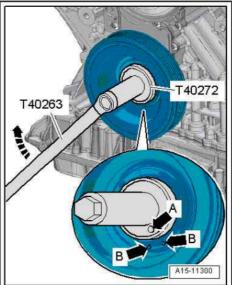


## Cylinder head (right-side):

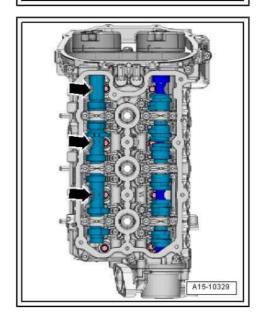


# Continued for both cylinder heads:

Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272-.

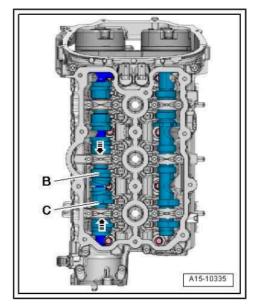


The recesses -arrows- on the exhaust camshaft must point towards the outside of the engine.



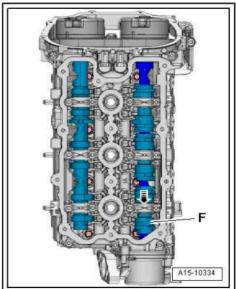
## Cylinder head (left-side):

- Press sliders -B- and -C- as far as stop in direction of -arrow-(sliders should not be under load).



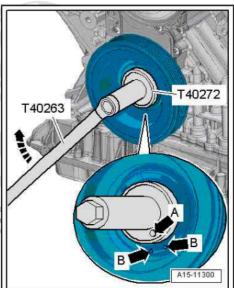
## Cylinder head (right-side):

Press slider -F- as far as stop in direction of -arrow- (slider should not be under load).



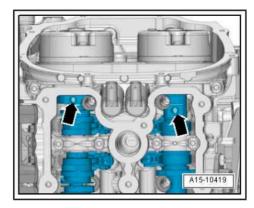
# Continued for both cylinder heads:

Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272-.

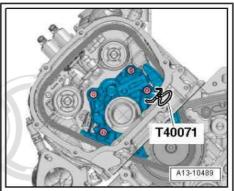


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

The threaded holes -arrows- in the camshafts must face upwards.



- Remove timing chains from camshafts ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114 .
- Remove locking pin T40071- from cylinder head (left-side).



Remove bolts -1- and -2- and detach chain tensioner from cylinder head (right-side).



Note

Locking pin - T40071- remains in place.

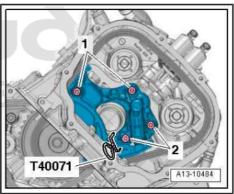
Protected by copyright. Copying for private permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. with respect to the correctness of inform



## Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns.

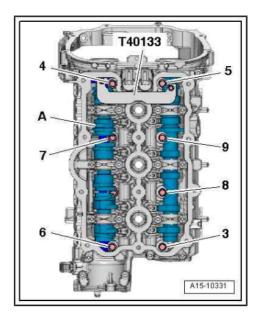
Do not turn crankshaft if one or both of the camshaft timing chains has been removed from the cylinder head(s).





## Cylinder head (left-side):

- Move slider -A- as required (slider should not be under load) and unscrew and remove bolts -3 ... 9-.
- Detach cylinder head and set it down on a soft surface (foam plastic).







### Cylinder head (right-side):

- Move sliders -D- and -E- as required (sliders should not be under load) and unscrew and remove bolts -10 ... 16-.
- Detach cylinder head and set it down on a soft surface (foam plastic).

#### Installing



#### Caution

Risk of damage to sealing surfaces.

- Carefully remove sealant residue from cylinder head and cylinder block.
- Ensure that no long scores or scratches are made on the surfaces.

Risk of damage to cylinder block.

No oil or coolant must be allowed to remain in the blind holes for the cylinder head bolts in the cylinder block.

Ensure that cylinder head gasket seals properly:

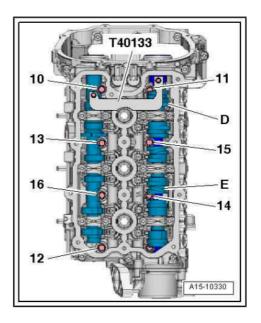
- Carefully remove any remaining emery and abrasive ma-
- Do not remove new cylinder head gasket from packaging until it is ready to be fitted.
- Handle the cylinder head gasket very carefully to prevent damage to the silicone coating or the indented area of the gasket.

Risk of damage to open valves.

When installing an exchange cylinder head, the plastic protectors fitted to protect the open valves should not be removed until the cylinder head is ready to be fitted.

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on valve gear.

Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is operated.



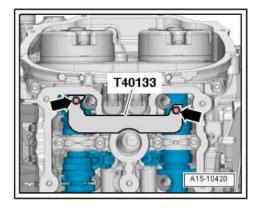


#### Note

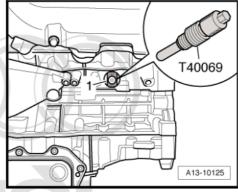
- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- Renew self-locking nuts as well as seals, gaskets and O-rings.
- Note the different sealants for sealing surfaces and cylinder head bolts.
- When installing an exchange cylinder head, the contact surfaces between the hydraulic compensation elements, roller rocker fingers and cams must be oiled before installing the cylinder head cover.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- After fitting a new cylinder head or cylinder head gasket, change the coolant and the engine oil.



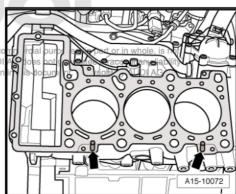
- Before fitting cylinder head set crankshaft and camshafts to "TDC". To do so, fit camshaft clamps T40133- to both cylinder heads and tighten to 25 Nm -arrows-.
- The camshaft clamp T40133- is positioned correctly if the holes for the cylinder head bolts remain free.



The locking pin - T40069- must be screwed into the crankshaft.

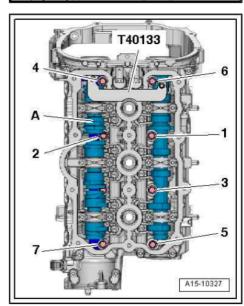


- Place cylinder head gasket in position.
- Note position of centring pins -arrows- in cylinder block.
- Installation position of cylinder head gasketiethe word by AUDI AG. AUD "oben" (top) or the part number should face towards the cylinformati inder head.
- Fit cylinder head.



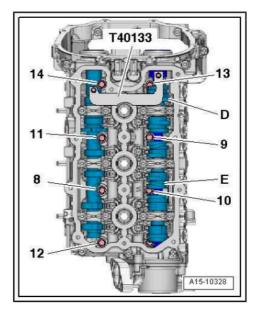
## Cylinder head (left-side):

- Move slider -A- as required (slider should not be under load) and fit bolts -1  $\dots$  7-.
- Tighten bolts in the sequence -1 ... 7- in 3 stages ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132.



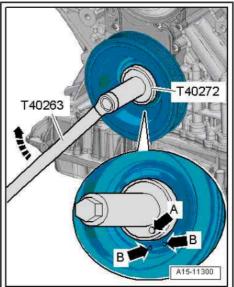
## Cylinder head (right-side):

- Move sliders -D- and -E- as required (sliders should not be under load) and fit bolts -8 ... 14-.
- Tighten bolts in the sequence -8 ... 14- in 3 stages ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132.

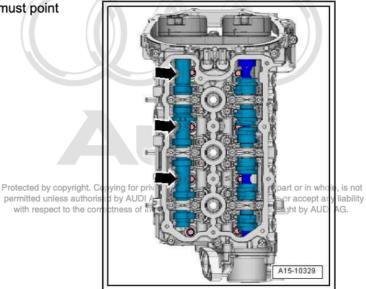


## Continued for both cylinder heads:

- Fit timing chains on camshafts ⇒ page 119.
- Remove camshaft clamp T40133- and locking pin T40069-.
- Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272- .

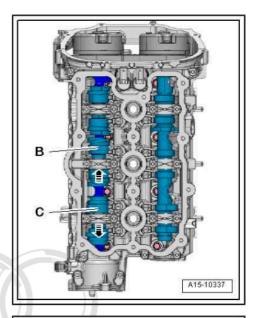


The recesses -arrows- on the exhaust camshaft must point towards the outside of the engine.



## Cylinder head (left-side):

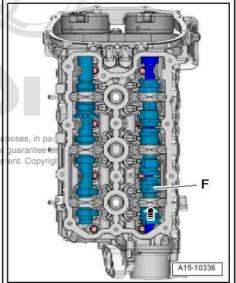
- Press sliders -B- and -C- as far as stop in direction of -arrow-(sliders should not be under load).



## Cylinder head (right-side):

Press slider -F- as far as stop in direction of -arrow- (slider should not be under load).

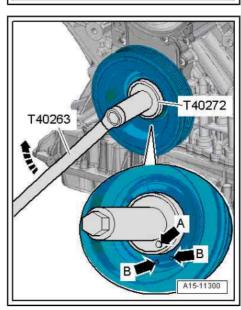




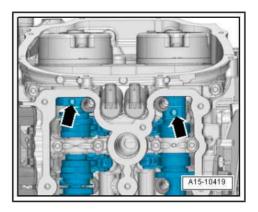
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

## Continued for both cylinder heads:

Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272-.

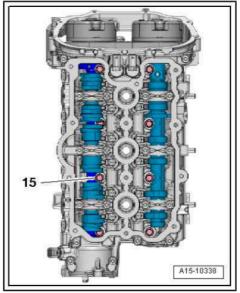


The threaded holes -arrows- in the camshafts must face upwards.



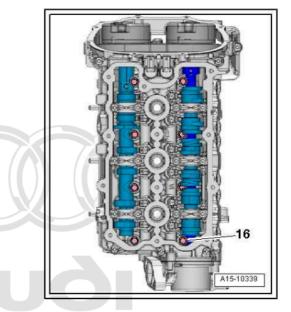
## Cylinder head (left-side):

Fit bolt -15- and tighten in three stages ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132.



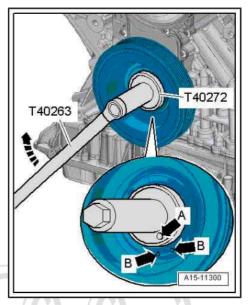
# Cylinder head (right-side):

Fit bolt -16- and tighten in three stages ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132.

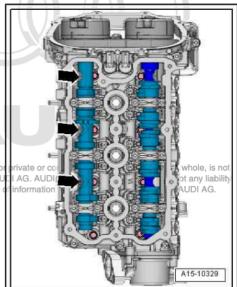


## Continued for both cylinder heads:

Turn crankshaft one complete rotation (360°) further in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) -T40263- and turning-over tool - T40272-.



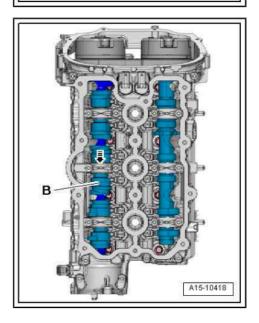
The recesses -arrows- on the exhaust camshaft must point towards the outside of the engine.



Protected by copyright. Copying fo permitted unless authorised by AU with respect to the correctness

## Cylinder head (left-side):

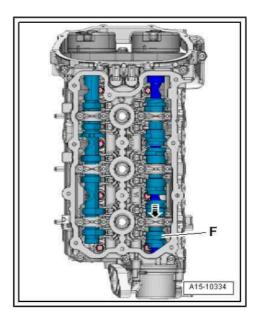
Press slider -B- as far as stop in direction of -arrow- (slider should not be under load).





# Cylinder head (right-side):

- Press slider -F- as far as stop in direction of -arrow- (slider should not be under load).







### Continued for both cylinder heads:

- Tighten bolts -arrows-.
- Cylinder head (left-side): 3 bolts
- Cylinder head (right-side): 4 bolts



## Note

Cylinder head bolts do not have to be torqued down again later after repair work.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

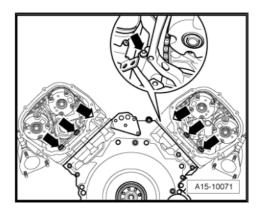
- Fit timing chains on camshafts ⇒ page 119.
- Install cylinder head covers ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161.
- Install coolant pipe (front) ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)", page 241.
- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install intake manifold (bottom sections) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296 / install intake manifold

  ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.
- Install oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212.
- Install coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244.
- Change engine oil ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.
- Fill cooling system with fresh coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view cylinder head", page 132
- ⇒ Fig. ""Guide tube for oil dipstick tightening torque"", page 135





### 3.2.2 Removing and installing cylinder head camshafts without assembly clearance feature



#### Note

Camshafts with no assembly clearance feature do not have recesses -arrows-. The camshafts must be removed before you can remove and install the cylinder head.

#### Removing

Engine in vehicle.



#### Note

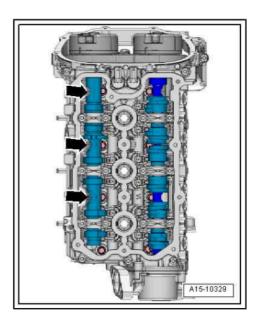
- The following chapter describes how to remove both cylinder heads together.
- If only one of the cylinder heads is to be removed, refer to the corresponding procedure described in this chapter.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.



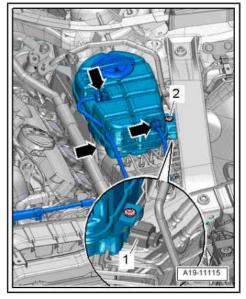
## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

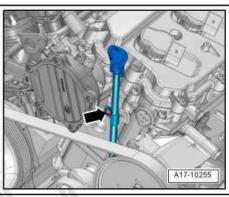
- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system.
- Reduce fuel pressure in high-pressure system "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page
- Remove coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244.
- Remove oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212



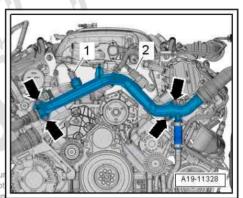
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Lift retaining clips -arrows- and disconnect coolant hoses from coolant expansion tank. Remove coolant expansion tank.



- Remove bolt -arrow- and pull out guide tube for oil dipstick.
- Remove intake manifold (bottom sections) ⇒ page 296.
- Unplug electrical connectors at injectors.

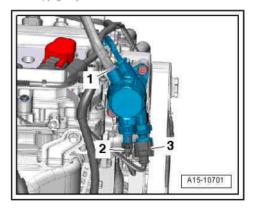


- Unplug electrical connectors at engine (front).
- For coolant temperature sender G62-
- For solenoid for coolant circuit N492-2 -
- Remove bolts -arrows- at coolant pipe (front).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pe permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

- Unscrew connection -1- and move fuel supply hose clear to one side.
- Unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.





Remove bolt -1- for earth wire on both sides.



Note

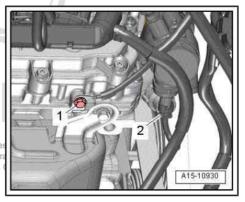
Disregard -item 2-.

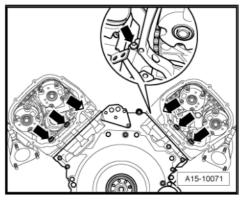
- Remove camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170
- Move electrical wiring harmesses clear to the side. AUDI AG does not gua with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Cylinder head (left-side): 3 bolts

Cylinder head (right-side): 4 bolts







- Slacken cylinder head bolts in the sequence -1 ... 8-.
- Detach cylinder head and set it down on a soft surface (foam plastic).

#### Installing



#### Caution

Risk of damage to sealing surfaces.

- ◆ Carefully remove sealant residue from cylinder head and cylinder block.
- Ensure that no long scores or scratches are made on the

Risk of damage to cylinder block.

No oil or coolant must be allowed to remain in the blind holes for the cylinder head bolts in the cylinder block.

Ensure that cylinder head gasket seals properly:

- Carefully remove any remaining emery and abrasive ma-
- Do not remove new cylinder head gasket from packaging until it is ready to be fitted.
- Handle the cylinder head gasket very carefully to prevent damage to the silicone coating or the indented area of the gasket.

Risk of damage to open valves.

♦ When installing an exchange cylinder head, the plastic protectors fitted to protect the open valves should not be removed until the cylinder head is ready to be fitted.

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on valve gear.

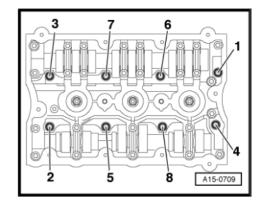
Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is opposes in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara

ntee or accept any liability opvright by AUDI AG.

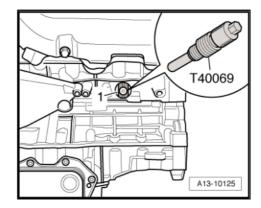


## Note

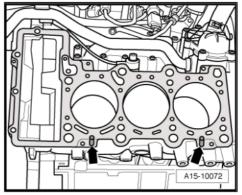
- Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.
- Renew self-locking nuts as well as seals, gaskets and O-rings.
- Note the different sealants for sealing surfaces and cylinder head bolts.
- When installing an exchange cylinder head, the contact surfaces between the hydraulic compensation elements, roller rocker fingers and cams must be oiled before installing the cylinder head cover.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- After fitting a new cylinder head or cylinder head gasket, change the coolant and the engine oil.



- The locking pin T40069- must be screwed into the crankshaft.



- Place cylinder head gasket in position.
- Note position of centring pins -arrows- in cylinder block.
- Installation position of cylinder head gasket: the word "oben" (top) or the part number should face towards the cylinder head.
- Fit cylinder head.
- Insert and hand-tighten cylinder head bolts.
- Tighten cylinder head bolts ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head with camshafts without assembly clearance feature - tightening torque and sequence" , page 135







- Tighten bolts -arrows-.
- Cylinder head (left-side): 3 bolts
- Cylinder head (right-side): 4 bolts



#### Note

Cylinder head bolts do not have to be torqued down again later after repair work.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.
- Install cylinder head covers ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161.
- Install coolant pipe (front) ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)", page 241
- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install intake manifold (bottom sections) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Install oil filter housing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212.
- Install coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244 .
- Change engine oil ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411 .
- Fill cooling system with fresh coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.

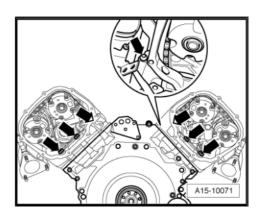
#### **Tightening torques**

- ♦ ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view cylinder head", page 132
- ⇒ Fig. ""Guide tube for oil dipstick tightening torque"", page 135

#### 3.3 Removing and installing cylinder headercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability cover with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

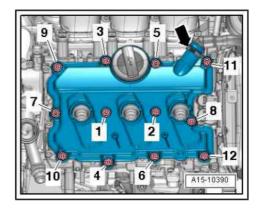
#### Removing

Remove ignition coils ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374.



### Cylinder head cover (left-side):

- Disconnect crankcase breather hose -arrow- by pressing release tabs.
- Remove bolts in the sequence -12 ... 1- and remove cylinder head cover (left-side).



## Cylinder head cover (right-side):

- Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Disconnect crankcase breather hose -arrow- by pressing release tabs.
- Remove bolts in the sequence -12 ... 1- and remove cylinder head cover (right-side).

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

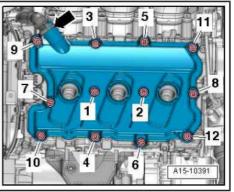
- Renew gasket for cylinder head cover if damaged.
- Renew bolts for cylinder head cover if seals on bolts are damaged.
- Fit new O-rings.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.
- Tighten bolts for cylinder head cover (left-side) ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 134.
- Tighten bolts for cylinder head cover (right-side) ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 134.
- Install air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Install ignition coils ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374.

Tightening for gibbs copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (left-side) tightening torque and sequence"", page 134
- ⇒ Fig. ""Cylinder head cover (right-side) tightening torque and sequence", page 134

#### 3.4 Checking compression

Special tools and workshop equipment required





♦ Spark plug spanner - 3122 B-



♦ Compression tester - V.A.G 1763-



#### Procedure

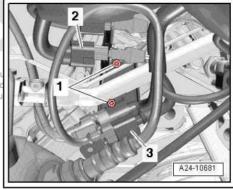
- Engine oil temperature at least 30 °C
- Battery voltage at least 12.5 V
- Remove all ignition coils ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- for injectors at rear of cylinder head (left-side).



Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial p permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does n with respect to the correctness of information in this doc





Unplug electrical connector -2- for injectors at rear of cylinder head (right-side).



Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.

- Unscrew spark plugs using spark plug socket 3122 B-
- Check compression pressure with compression tester -V.A.G 1763- .



Note

Using the compression tester ⇒ Operating instructions .

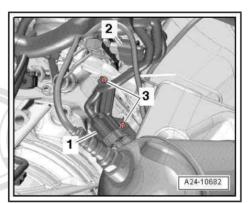
- Have a 2nd mechanic press down the accelerator pedal completely and at the same time operate the starter until the by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not pressure on the tester display no longer increases permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Repeat procedure on each cylinder.

Compression pressure	bar
When new	14.5 21.0
Wear limit	14.0
Maximum difference between cylinders	3.0

### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Install spark plugs ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.
- Install ignition coils ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374.
- Erase any entries in event memory resulting from testing:
- Vehicle diagnostic tester must be connected.
- Selecting operating mode.
- Using Go To button and "Function/component selection" function, select the following in succession from tree:
- Drive train
- 01 Self-diagnosis compatible systems
- Simos injection and ignition system
- **Functions**
- Readiness code





# Valve gear

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view valve gear", page 165
- ⇒ "4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft", page 169
- ⇒ "4.3 Measuring radial clearance of camshaft", page 170
- ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170
- ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing cam actuators", page 177
- ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing camshaft control valves", page 178
- ⇒ "4.7 Checking hydraulic compensation elements", page 179
- Protected by Removing and installing valve stem of seals page 181
  - Exploded view valve gear



## Note

- Cylinder heads which have cracks between the valve seats or between a valve seat insert and the spark plug thread can be re-installed without reducing service life, provided the cracks are only slight and do not exceed a maximum of 0.3 mm in width, and no more than the first 4 turns of the spark plug threads are cracked.
- ♦ Illustration shows the cylinder head for cylinder bank 2 (left-side).

## 1 - Sealing plug

Apply sealant when installing; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

## 2 - Cylinder head

Checking valve guides ⇒ "5.1 Checking valve guides", page 190

### 3 - Valve stem oil seal

- Renewing with cylinder head installed ⇒ "4.8.1 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head installed)", page 181
- Renewing with cylinder head removed ⇒ "4.8.2 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head re-moved)", page 185

## 4 - Valve spring

- Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of valve spring"", page 168
- 5 Hydraulic compensation element
  - □ Clipped into roller rocker finger -item 8-
  - Checking ⇒ "4.7 Checking hydraulic compensation elements", page 179
  - Mark installation position for re-installation with a coloured pen
  - □ Lubricate contact surfaces before installing

### 6 - Valve spring plate

7 - Valve cotters

## 8 - Roller rocker finger

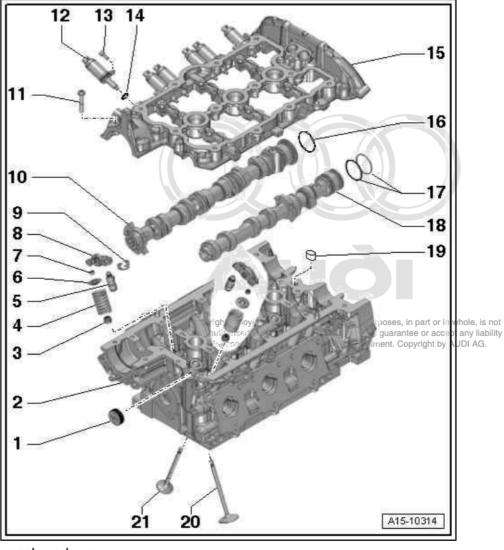
- Mark installation position for re-installation
- Check roller bearings for ease of movement
- Lubricate contact surfaces before installing
- ☐ Allocation to cylinders ⇒ Fig. ""Allocation of roller rocker fingers to cylinders"", page 168
- ☐ Attach to hydraulic compensation element -item 5- using securing clip -item 9-

## 9 - Securing clip

- Not supplied separately
- Mark installation position for re-installation
- Check for firm attachment

## 10 - Inlet camshaft

- With 3 sliders
- Do not dismantle
- Measuring axial clearance ⇒ "4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft", page 169
- □ Removing and installing ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170





	Runout: max. 0.04 mm
11 - E	
_	Renew
	Tightening sequence:
	Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and se- uence" , page 168
	Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head plank 2 (left-side) in tightening torque and sequence" age 169  permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
12 - A	Actuator
	For camshaft adjustment Removing and installing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing cam actuators", page 177
13 - E	Bolt
	5 Nm
	O-ring Renew
	Retaining frame
	With integrated camshaft bearings
	Removing and installing <del>⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170</del>
16 - C	Compression ring
17 - F	Rectangular section seals
18 - E	Exhaust camshaft
	Measuring axial clearance ⇒ "4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft", page 169
	Removing and installing ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170
	Measuring radial clearance ⇒ "4.3 Measuring radial clearance of camshaft", page 170 Runout: max. 0.04 mm
	Oil strainer  Not fitted on all versions: for allegation refer to
	Not fitted on all versions; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
	nlet valve  Do not machine, only grinding-in is permitted
	Mark installation position for re-installation
_	Valve dimensions ⇒ "5.3 Valve dimensions", page 191
	Checking valve guides ⇒ "5.1 Checking valve guides", page 190
21 - E	Exhaust valve
	Do not machine, only grinding-in is permitted
	Mark installation position for re-installation
	Valve dimensions ⇒ "5.3 Valve dimensions", page 191
	Checking valve guides ⇒ "5.1 Checking valve guides", page 190

## Allocation of roller rocker fingers to cylinders



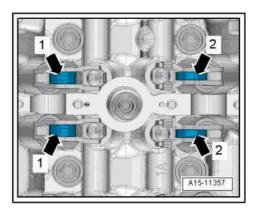
#### Caution

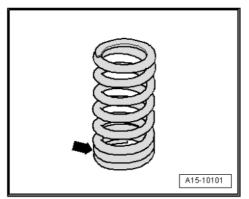
Risk of damage to engine.

- Note allocation of roller rocker fingers to cylinders
- Roller rocker fingers with wide rollers -arrow 1- correspond to cylinders without cylinder shut-off.
- Roller rocker fingers with narrow rollers -arrow 2- correspond to cylinders with cylinder shut-off.



Closely spaced spring coils -arrow- face towards cylinder head.





Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 1 (rightside) - tightening torque and sequence

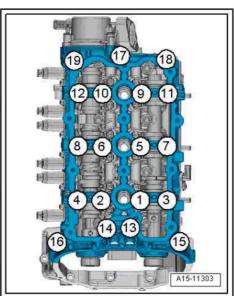


## Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Tighten bolts in 3 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 19-	Screw in by hand until contact is made  The retaining frame should make contact with the cylinder head over the full surface
2.	-1 19-	8 Nm
3.	-1 19-	Turn 90° further



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence

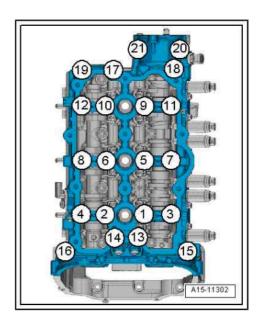


Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Tighten bolts in 3 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque/angle specification
1.	-1 21-	Screw in by hand until contact is made     The retaining frame should make contact with the cylinder head over the full surface
2.	-1 21-	8 Nm
3.	-1 21-	Turn 90° further



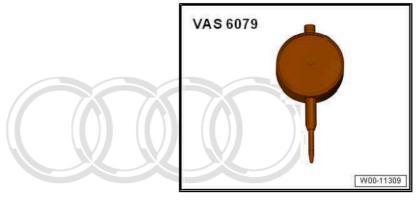
#### 4.2 Measuring axial clearance of camshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



◆ Dial gauge - VAS 6079-





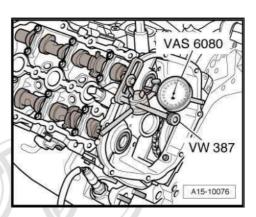
#### Procedure

- Remove camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.
- For re-installation, mark original positions of roller rocker fingers, retaining clips and hydraulic compensation elements, remove and put down on a clean surface.
- Re-insert camshafts, install retaining frame ⇒ page 169 and tighten with old bolts to 8 Nm (do not turn further).
- Secure universal dial gauge bracket VW 387- with dial gauge - VAS 6079- to cylinder head as shown in illustration.
- Press camshaft against dial gauge by hand.
- Set dial gauge to "0".
- Press camshaft away from dial gauge and read off value:

#### Axial clearance:

Inlet camshaft: 0.080 ... 0.165 mm

Exhaust camshaft: 0.100 ... 0.191 mm



#### te or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not 4.3 Measuring radial clearance of reamshafts. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ormation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Plastigauge

#### Procedure

- Remove camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.
- Mark allocation of roller rocker fingers for re-installation.
- Carefully remove roller rocker fingers and place them on a clean surface.
- Clean bearings and bearing journals.
- Place a length of Plastigauge corresponding to the width of the bearing on the bearing journal or bearing shell to be measured.
- The Plastigauge must be positioned in the centre of the bear-
- Re-insert camshafts, fit retaining frame and tighten with old bolts to 8 Nm (do not turn further) ⇒ page 169 without rotating camshafts.
- Remove retaining frame and camshafts again.
- Compare width of Plastigauge with measurement scale.

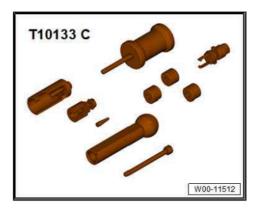
### Radial clearance:

- 24 mm bearing Ø: 0.024 ... 0.066 mm
- 36 mm bearing Ø: 0.032 ... 0.078 mm

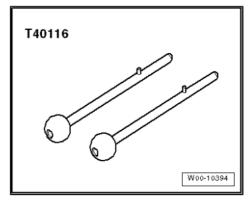
#### 4.4 Removing and installing camshaft

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Impact extractor attachment -T10133/3- from tool set for FSI engines - T10133 C-



♦ Locating pins - T40116-

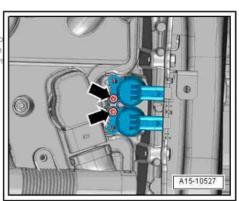


- ◆ Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- ◆ Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

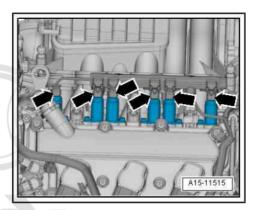
### Removing

- Remove timing chains from camshafts ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page <u>114</u> .
- To remove camshafts in cylinder head (left-side), remove vacuum pump ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 47; Vacuum system; Removing and installing vacuum pump.
- To remove camshafts in cylinder head (right-side), first remove high-pressure pump and housing for high-pressure pump drive ⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump", page 314
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach camshaft control valves concerned.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop



Unplug electrical connectors -arrows- (left and right) at cam actuators and move electrical wiring harness clear.



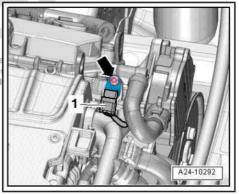
Unplug electrical connector -1- at Hall sender.



Note

Disregard -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerce permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doc with respect to the correctness of information in this

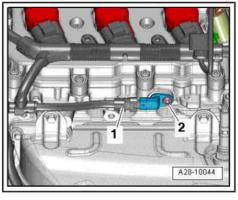


Unplug electrical connector -1- at Hall sender concerned.

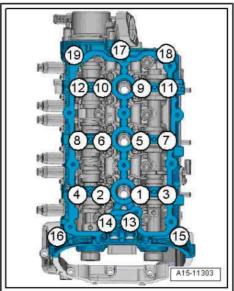


Note

Disregard -item 2-.



- Remove retaining frame:
- Cylinder head, bank 1 (right-side): Slacken bolts in the sequence -19 ... 1-.





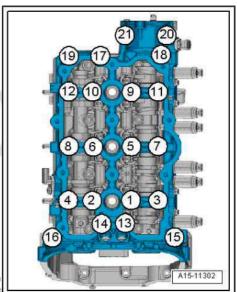
- Cylinder head, bank 2 (left-side): Slacken bolts in the sequence -21 ... 1-.
- Remove bolts, carefully release retaining frame from bonded joint and set it down on a soft surface on workbench.

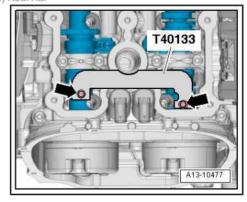






- Remove camshaft clamp T40133- -arrows-.
- Mark and remove camshafts.





## Installing



Note

Renew all seals and gaskets.

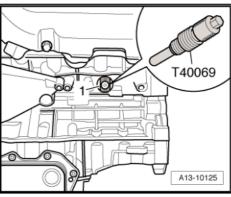
- Crankshaft -1- locked in "TDC" position with locking pin -T40069-.
- Hydraulic compensation elements and roller rocker fingers installed.



Caution

Protect lubrication system and bearings against contamina-

◆ Cover exposed parts of the engine.





## WARNING

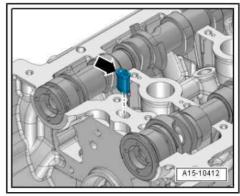
Risk of eye injury.

- Put on safety goggles.
- Remove remaining sealant from cylinder head and retaining frame -1- using rotating plastic brush or similar.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.

permitted unless authorised by AUDI

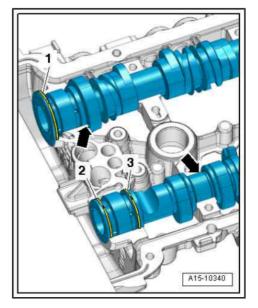
with respect to the correctness of

- Check strainer -arrow- for dirt and clean as necessary.
- Oil running surfaces of both camshafts.

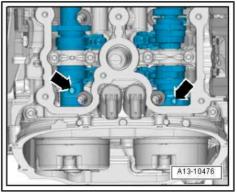


te or commercial purposes, in part or in

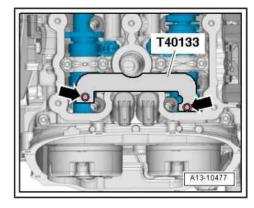
- Fit camshafts in retaining frame.
- Camshafts must be in correct position in axial bearings -arrows- in retaining frame.
- The ends of the rectangular section seals -1, 2, 3- must point up or down. The ends of the rectangular section seals must never point to the side.
- Turn retaining frame over with camshafts fitted, holding camshafts firmly in position.



- Turn camshafts until threaded holes -arrows- point upwards.
- Check that camshafts are still in correct position in axial bearings in retaining frame.



Fit camshaft clamp - T40133- and tighten bolts -arrows- to

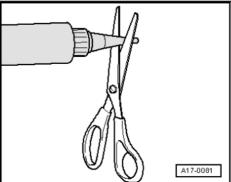




# Note

Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle  $\varnothing$  approx. 2 mm).



Turn retaining frame upside down again.



# Caution

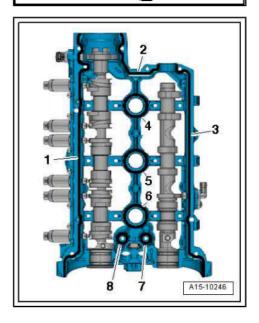
Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ◆ The sealant beads must not be thicker than specified. AG
- Apply beads of sealant -4  $\dots$  8- onto clean sealing surfaces of retaining frame as shown in illustration.
- Width of sealant beads: 2.0 mm.
- Apply beads of sealant -1 ... 3- onto clean sealing surfaces of retaining frame as shown in illustration.
- Width of sealant beads: 2.5 mm.



# Note

The retaining frame must be installed within 5 minutes after applying the sealant.



- Fit retaining frame onto cylinder head.
- Insert locating pins -T40116- in retaining frame and cylinder
- Tighten bolts for retaining frame for camshafts:
- ⇒ Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 168
- ⇒ Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 169

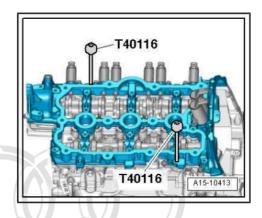


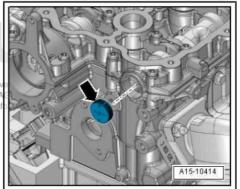
Note

After installing the retaining frame, wait about 30 minutes for the sealant to dry.

- Clean bore for sealing plug in cylinder head; it must be free of oil and grease.
- Coat outer circumference of sealing plug -arrow- with sealant; for sealant refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Drive in sealing plug until flush.

Protected by copyright. Copying for pr permitted unless authorised by AUDI with respect to the correctness of ir







Use impact extractor attachment -T40116- to pull out locating pins -T10133/3-.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install camshaft control valves ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132.
- Install housing for high-pressure pump drive and high-pres-⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump", page 314.
- Install vacuum pump ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 47; Vacuum system; Removing and installing vacuum pump.
- Fit timing chains on camshafts ⇒ "2.4 Removing camshaft timing chain from camshafts", page 114.



# Caution

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on

- The hydraulic tappets have to settle; wait for approx. 30 minutes after installing camshafts before starting engine.
- Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is operated.

# Tightening torques

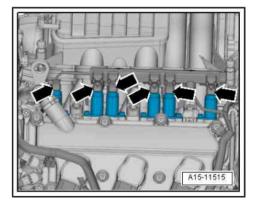
- ⇒ Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 1 (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 168
- ⇒ Fig. ""Retaining frame for camshafts of cylinder head, bank 2 (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence", page 169

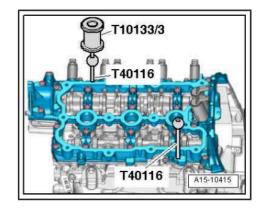
#### 4.5 Removing and installing cam actuators

# Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- Remove engine cover pane with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", <u>page 64</u> .
- Unplug electrical connectors -arrows- (left and right) at cam actuators and move electrical wiring harness clear.



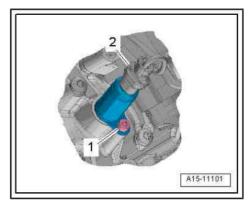


Remove bolt -1- and pull off cam actuator.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.



# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

Fit new O-rings.



Caution

Risk of damage to engine.

- Pins of all actuators for camshaft adjustment must be brought into installation position.
- Press down pins of actuators for camshaft adjustment Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability -arrow- by hand.
- Pins of all actuators must not be in extended position information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# Tightening torques

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - valve gear", page 165

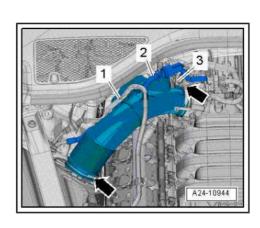
### 4.6 Removing and installing camshaft control valves

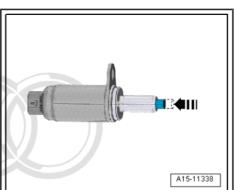
# Removing

Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

Applies to cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.







# All vehicles (continued)

- Unplug relevant electrical connector -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach valve.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Renew O-rings after removing.
- Secure all hose connections with correct type of hose clips (as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64

# Tightening torques

- ♦ #4.1 Exploded view valve gear", page 165 for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
- ♦ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clibs "does not guarantee or accept any liability page 285.

  With respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. page 285

### 4.7 Checking hydraulic compensation elements

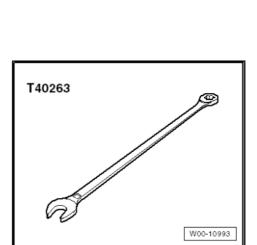


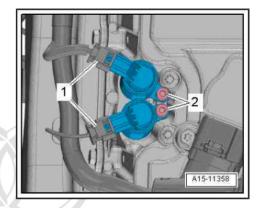
# Note

- The hydraulic compensation elements cannot be serviced.
- Irregular valve noises when starting engine are normal.

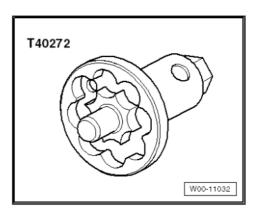
# Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Feeler gauge
- Wrench, 21 mm T40263-





Turning-over tool - T40272-



### Procedure

- Start engine and run until radiator fan has started up once.
- Increase engine speed to approx. 2500 rpm for 2 minutes (perform road test if necessary).
- If the compensation elements are still noisy, locate the defective compensation element as follows:



### WARNING

Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

- ◆ Even when the ignition is switched off, the radiator fans can start up without warning due to accumulated heat in the engine compartment, etc.
- Remove corresponding cylinder head cover ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161.
- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.

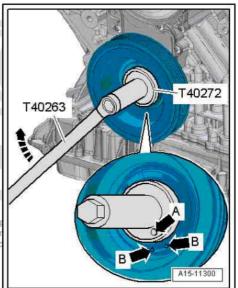


# Note

If necessary, remove radiator fan control unit.

Turn crankshaft with wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turningover tool - T40272- in normal direction of engine rotation -arrow- until cam of hydraulic compensation element to be checked is at top. permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does

with respect to the correctness of information in this do

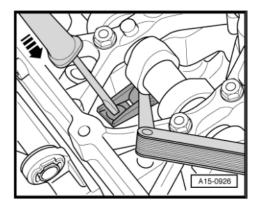




- Press roller rocker finger down -arrow- to determine clearance between cam and roller rocker finger.
- If it is possible to insert a feeler gauge of 0.20 mm between cam and roller rocker finger, renew hydraulic compensation
  - ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.

# Additional steps required

Install cylinder head cover ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing cylinder head cover", page 161.

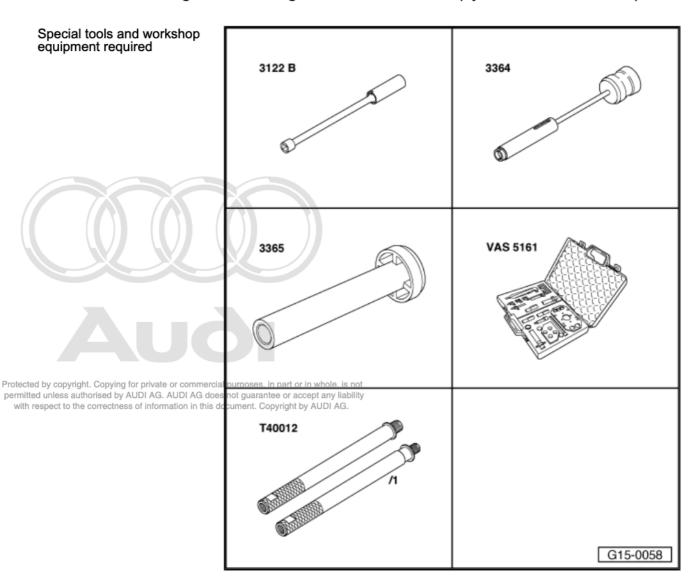


### 4.8 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals

⇒ "4.8.1 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head installed)", page 181

⇒ "4.8.2 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head removed)", page 185

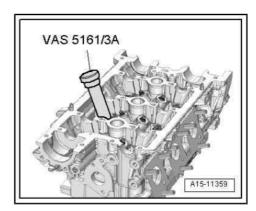
#### 4.8.1 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head installed)



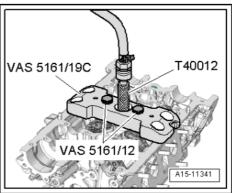
- Spark plug spanner 3122 B-
- Valve stem seal puller 3364-
- Valve stem seal fitting tool 3365-
- Removal and installation device for valve cotters VAS 5161 A- with guide plate -VAS 5161/19C-, or substitute -VAS 5161/19B-
- ♦ Adapters T40012-

# Procedure

- Remove camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.
- Mark original positions of roller rocker fingers and hydraulic compensation elements for re-installation.
- Remove roller rocker fingers together with hydraulic compensation elements and put down on a clean surface.
- Unscrew spark plugs using spark plug socket 3122 B-.
- Set piston of appropriate cylinder to "bottom dead centre".
- Apply drift -VAS 5161/3A- to valve spring plate and use plasticheaded hammer to release sticking valve cotters.



- Fit guide plate -VAS 5161/19C- from removal and installation device for valve cotters - VAS 5161 A- on cylinder head.
- Secure guide plate with knurled screws -VAS 5161/12-.
- Screw adapter T40012- with seal hand-tight into the corresponding spark plug thread.
- Connect adapter to compressed air line using a commercially available connection piece and apply constant air pressure.
- Minimum pressure: 6 bar



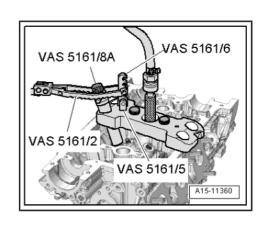


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



A15-0547

- Screw snap-in device -VAS 5161/6- with engaging fork -VAS 5161/5- into guide plate.
- Insert assembly cartridge -VAS 5161/8A- in guide plate.
- Attach pressure fork -VAS 5161/2- to snap-in device and push assembly cartridge down.
- At the same time, turn knurled screw of assembly cartridge clockwise until tips engage in valve cotters.
- Move knurled screw back and forth slightly; the valve cotters are thus forced apart and taken up by the assembly cartridge.
- Release pressure fork.
- Take out assembly cartridge.
- Detach guide plate and turn to one side.
- The compressed air hose remains connected.
- Detach valve spring with valve spring plate.
- Pull off valve stem oil seal with valve stem seal puller 3364-



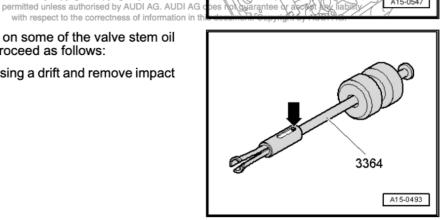
3364



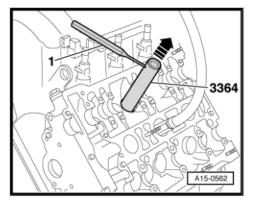
with respect to the correctness of information in the If the puller -3364- cannot be used on some of the valve stem oil

Knock out pin -arrow- of puller using a drift and remove impact extractor attachment.

seals due to the confined space, proceed as follows:



- Apply bottom section of puller -3364- to valve stem oil seal.
- Secure puller with a punch or roll-pin drift -1-, as shown in illustration.
- Apply assembly lever to puller and pull out valve stem oil seal -arrow-.







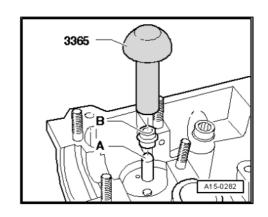
# Caution

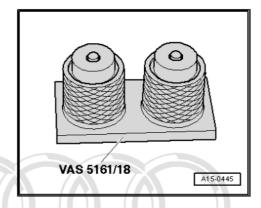
Make sure valve stem oil seals are not damaged when installing.

- New valve stem oil seals -B- are supplied with plastic sleeve; fit plastic sleeve -A- onto valve stem.
- Lightly oil sealing lip of valve stem oil seal.
- Slide valve stem oil seal onto plastic sleeve.
- Carefully press valve stem oil seal onto valve guide using valve stem seal fitting tool - 3365- .
- Take off plastic sleeve.

If valve cotters had been removed from assembly cartridge they must first be inserted in insertion device -VAS 5161/18-.

- Larger diameter of valve cotters faces upwards.
- Press assembly cartridge onto insertion device from above and pick up valve cotters.
- Insert valve spring and valve spring plate.
- Installation position of valve spring ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of valve spring", page 168.







Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



- Secure guide plate -VAS 5161/19C- back onto cylinder head.
- Insert assembly cartridge in guide plate.
- Press down pressure fork and pull knurled screw upwards while turning screw in both directions - this will insert the valve cotters.
- Release pressure fork with knurled screw still in pulled posi-
- Repeat procedure for each valve.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Ensure that all roller rocker fingers make contact with the ends of the valve stems correctly and are clipped onto their respective hydraulic compensation elements.
- Install spark plugs ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.
- Install camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.



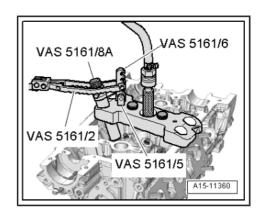
Caution

otected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is

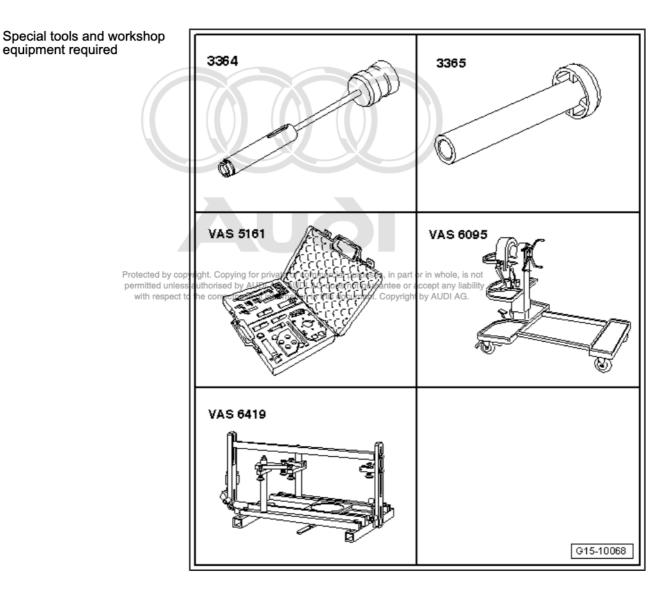
ermitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any lia

Risk of damage to valves and piston crowns after working on valve gear.

- ♦ The hydraulic tappets have to settle; wait for approx. 30 minutes after installing camshafts before starting engine.
- Turn the engine carefully at least 2 rotations to ensure that none of the valves make contact when the starter is operated.



4.8.2 Removing and installing valve stem oil seals (cylinder head removed)



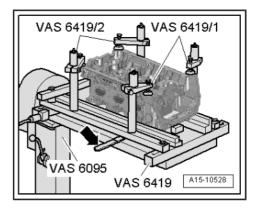
- Valve stem seal puller 3364-
- Valve stem seal fitting tool 3365-
- Removal and installation device for valve cotters VAS 5161 A- with guide plate -VAS 5161/19C-, or substitute -VAS 5161/19B-
- Engine and gearbox support VAS 6095-
- Cylinder head tensioning device VAS 6419-

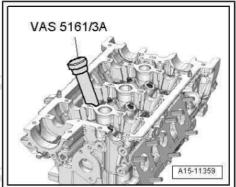
### Procedure

- Remove camshafts ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing camshaft", page 170.
- Mark original positions of roller rocker fingers and hydraulic compensation elements for re-installation.
- Remove roller rocker fingers together with hydraulic compensation elements and put down on a clean surface.



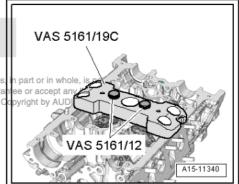
- Insert cylinder head tensioning device VAS 6419- into engine and gearbox support - VAS 6095-.
- Secure cylinder head in cylinder head tensioning device, as shown in illustration.
- Connect cylinder head tensioning device to compressed air supply.
- Using lever -arrow-, slide air pad under combustion chamber where valve stem oil seal is to be removed.
- Apply just enough compressed air to bring air pad into contact with valve heads.
- Apply drift -VAS 5161/3A- to valve spring plate and use plasticheaded hammer to release sticking valve cotters.



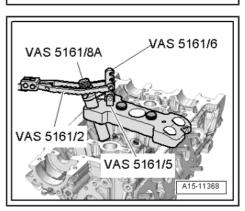


- Fit guide plate -VAS 5161/19C- onto cylinder head.
- Secure guide plate with knurled screws -VAS 5161/12-.

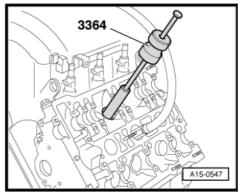
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guara with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



- Screw snap-in device -VAS 5161/6- with engaging fork -VAS 5161/5- into guide plate.
- Insert assembly cartridge -VAS 5161/8A- in guide plate.
- Attach pressure fork -VAS 5161/2- to snap-in device and push assembly cartridge down.
- At the same time, turn knurled screw of assembly cartridge clockwise until tips engage in valve cotters.
- Move knurled screw back and forth slightly; the valve cotters are thus forced apart and taken up by the assembly cartridge.
- Release pressure fork.
- Take out assembly cartridge.
- Detach guide plate and turn to one side.
- Detach valve spring with valve spring plate.



Pull off valve stem oil seal with valve stem seal puller - 3364-.





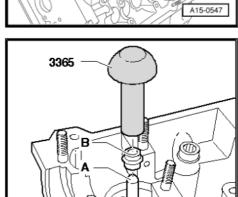
### Caution

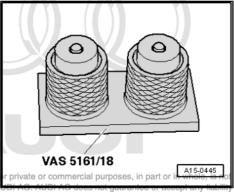
Make sure valve stem oil seals are not damaged when installing.

- New valve stem oil seals -B- are supplied with plastic sleeve; fit plastic sleeve -A- onto valve stem.
- Lightly oil sealing lip of valve stem oil seal.
- Slide valve stem oil seal onto plastic sleeve.
- Carefully press valve stem oil seal onto valve guide using valve stem seal fitting tool - 3365- .
- Take off plastic sleeve.

If valve cotters have been removed from assembly cartridge, they must first be inserted in insertion device -VAS 5161/18-.

- Larger diameter of valve cotters faces upwards.
- Press assembly cartridge onto insertion device from above and pick up valve cotters.
- Insert valve spring and valve spring plate.
- Installation position of valve spring ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of valve spring"", page 168.





permitted unless authorised by A with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying

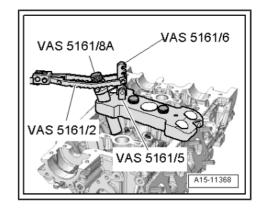


- Secure guide plate -VAS 5161/19C- back onto cylinder head.
- Insert assembly cartridge in guide plate.
- Press down pressure fork and pull knurled screw upwards while turning screw in both directions - this will insert the valve cotters.
- Release pressure fork with knurled screw still in pulled position.
- Repeat procedure for each valve.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Ensure that all roller rocker fingers make contact with the ends of the valve stems correctly and are clipped onto their respective hydraulic compensation elements.
- Install camshafts
  - ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing can shall purposes is part or in whole, is not by the convergence of accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# 5 Inlet and exhaust valves

- ⇒ "5.1 Checking valve guides", page 190
- ⇒ "5.2 Checking valves", page 191
- ⇒ "5.3 Valve dimensions", page 191

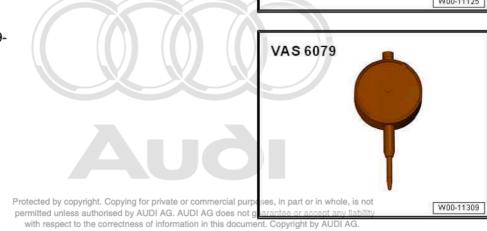
# 5.1 Checking valve guides

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387-



Dial gauge - VAS 6079-



# Procedure



# Note

- If the valve has to be renewed as part of a repair, use a new valve for the measurement.
- Only insert inlet valve into inlet valve guide and exhaust valve into exhaust valve guide, as the stem diameters are different.



- Secure dial gauge VAS 6079- to cylinder head with universal dial gauge bracket - VW 387- as shown in illustration.
- Insert valve into guide.
- End of valve stem must be flush with valve guide.
- Measure the amount of sideways play.
- Wear limit: 0.8 mm.
- If the wear limit is exceeded, repeat the measurement with new valves.
- Renew cylinder head if wear limit is still exceeded.



Note

Valve guides cannot be renewed.

#### 5.2 Checking valves

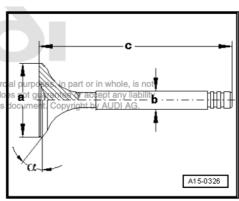
- Visually inspect for scoring on valve stems and contact surfa-
- Renew valve if scoring is clearly visible.

#### 5.3 Valve dimensions

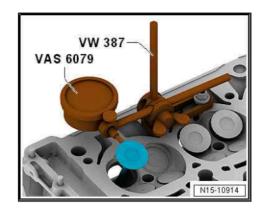


Inlet and exhaust valves must not be machined. Only grinding-in is permitted. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do with respect to the correctness of information in this



Dimension		Inlet valve		Exhaust valve	
		2.5 ltr. engine	2.8 ltr. engine	2.5 ltr. engine	2.8 ltr. engine
Ø a	mm	32.35 ± 0.10	33.85 ± 0.10	28.0 ± 0.1	28.0 ± 0.1
Ø b	mm	5.98 ± 0.01	5.98 ± 0.01	5.96 ± 0.01	5.96 ± 0.01
С	mm	104.97 ± 0.20	103.97 ± 0.20	102.87 ± 0.20	101.87 ± 0.2
α	∠°	45	45	45	45







# WARNING

- Care must be taken when disposing of old sodium-cooled exhaust valves.
- The valves must be sawn in two with a metal saw between the centre of the stem and valve head. When doing so, the valves must not come into contact with water. After preparing the valves, throw a maximum of ten into a bucket of water. Then step away immediately, since a chemical Proceaction will occur in which the sodium filling burns whole, is not
- After performing these steps the valves can be disposed of in the normal way.



# Lubrication

# Sump/oil pump

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view sump/oil pump", page 193
- ⇒ "1.2 Engine oil", page 196
- ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)", page 196
- ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)", page 199
- ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing oil pump", page 202
- ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender G266 ", page 202
- 1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump

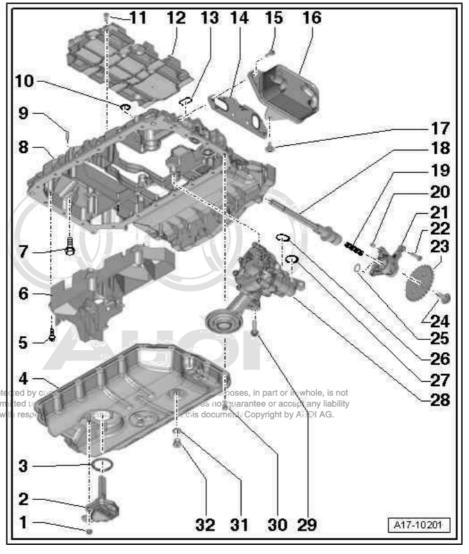


Note

- If large quantities of metal shavings or abrasion are found when performing engine repairs, this may be an indication of damage to the crankshaft or conrod bearings. To prevent further damage, the following steps are required after completion of repair work: clean the oil passages carefully and renew the oil spray jets, engine oil cooler and oil filter.
- ♦ Oil spray jet for piston cooling ⇒ Fig. ""Oil spray jet for piston cooling"", page 92.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 1 Nut
  - □ 9 Nm
- 2 Oil level and oil temperature sender - G266-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender G266 ", page 202
- 3 Seal
  - □ Renew
- 4 Sump (bottom section)
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)", page 196
- 5 Bolt
  - Renew
  - □ 3 Nm +90°
- 6 Baffle plate (bottom)
- 7 Bolt
  - Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (top section) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 196
- 8 Sump (top section)
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing sump (top section)", page 199
- 9 Dowel sleeve
  - □ 2x
- 10 O-ring
  - □ Renew
  - ☐ Insert in retaining frame
- 11 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ Apply locking fluid when installing; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - □ 3 Nm +90°
- 12 Baffle plate (top)
- 13 Gasket
  - Insert in retaining frame
  - Renew
- 14 Gasket
  - □ Renew
- 15 Bolt
  - □ Renew
  - □ 3 Nm +90°





16 - Engine oil cooler
☐ With oil cooler bypass valve
☐ See note <u>⇒ page 193</u>
□ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203
17 - Bolt
□ 9 Nm
18 - Drive shaft
☐ For oil pump
19 - Compression spring
20 - Distance sleeve
□ 2x
21 - Bracket
22 - Bolt
□ 9 Nm
23 - Chain sprocket
☐ For oil pump
<ul> <li>Can only be fitted in one position on drive shaft</li> </ul>
24 - Bolt
□ Renew
☐ To loosen and tighten, use pin wrench - 3212- to counterhold chain sprocket
□ 30 Nm +90°
25 - O-ring
Renew
26 - Gasket
Renew
27 - O-ring
Renew
28 - Oil pump
□ Do not dismantle
<ul> <li>Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing oil pump", page 202</li> </ul>
29 - Bolt 20 Nm
30 - Bolt  ☐ Renew
☐ Tightening torque and sequence
⇒ Fig. ""Sump (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence" , page 196
31 - Seal
□ Renew
32 - Oil drain plug
□ 30 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Sump (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence



Note

Renew the bolts tightened with specified tightening angle.

Tighten bolts in 2 stages as follows:

Stage	Tightening torque/angle specification		
1.	8 Nm in diagonal sequence		
2.	Turn 90° further in diagonal sequence		

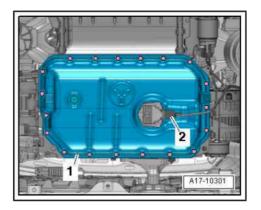
Sump (top section) - tightening torque and sequence

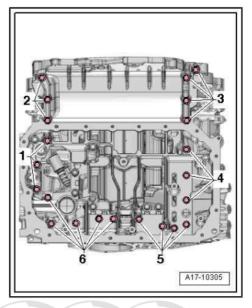
- Tighten bolts to 20 Nm in the sequence shown.



Note

Depending on version, -item 3- comprises 3 or 4 bolts.





#### 1.2 Engine oil

Refer to ⇒ Maintenance tables for engine oil capacity, oil specifications and viscosity grades.



Caution

Risk of damage to catalytic converter.

The oil level must not be above the "MAX" mark on the dipstick.

### Removing and installing sump (bottom) ht. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability 1.3 section) with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

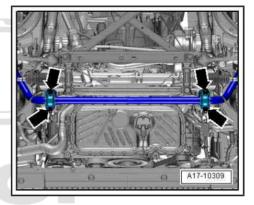
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Electric drill with plastic brush
- Safety goggles
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



# Removing

- Engine oil drained ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- Remove nuts -arrows- and lower anti-roll bar.



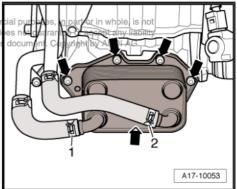


Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG with respect to the correctness of information in th

Lay a cloth under the engine oil cooler to catch escaping engine

Remove bolts -arrows- and tie up engine oil cooler to one side with coolant hoses -1- and -2- attached.



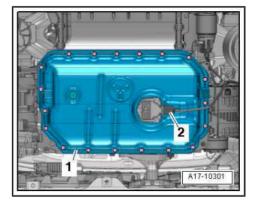
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at oil level and oil temperature sender - G266- and move electrical wiring clear.
- Remove bolts for sump (bottom section) -1-.
- Release sump (bottom section) from bonded joint, taking care not to bend sump.

# Installing



Note

- Renew seals.
- The sump (bottom section) must be renewed if its coating is damaged or if it is bent.





# Caution

Protect lubrication system and bearings against contamination.

Cover exposed parts of the engine.



# WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- Put on safety goggles.
- Remove remaining sealant on bottom section and top section of sump -1- with a rotating plastic brush or similar.



# Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Take care not to damage the coating on the sump (bottom sees of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. tion).

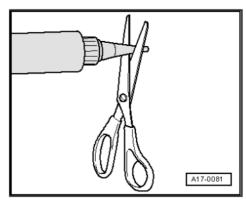
Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.



# Note

Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle  $\varnothing$  approx. 1 mm).



A17-10940



# Caution

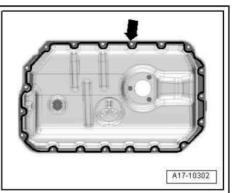
Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.
- Apply bead of sealant -arrow- onto clean sealing surface of sump (bottom section) as illustrated.
- Width of sealant bead: approx. 1.5 mm.



# Note

The sump (bottom section) must be installed within 5 minutes after applying the sealant.





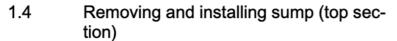
Fit sump (bottom section) and tighten bolts ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (bottom section) - tightening torque and sequence", page 196.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install engine oil cooler ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203.
- Fill with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411 .

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (bottom section) tightening torque and sequence"", page 196
- Anti-roll bar ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe



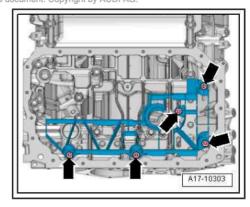
Special tools and workshop equipment required

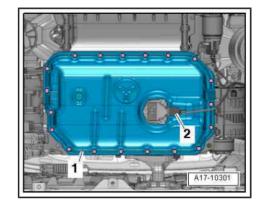
- Safety goggles
- ♦ Electric drill with plastic brush
- Sealant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue

# Removing

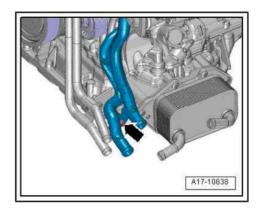
- Engine secured to engine and gearbox support VAS 6095-"1.3 Securing engine to engine and gearbox support", page
- Remove timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Remove oil pump Remove oil pump

  \*\*1.5 Removing and installing oil published by the state of the content of the
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach baffle plate (bottom).





Remove bolt -arrow- for coolant pipes (left-side).



Remove bolts -1 ... 6- for sump (top section).



Note

Depending on version, -item 3- comprises 3 or 4 bolts.

Carefully release sump (top section) from bonded joint and pry sump off dowel pins on cylinder block.

# Installing



Note

Renew gasket and O-ring.



# Caution

Protect lubrication system and bearings against contamination.

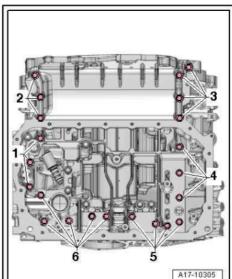
- Cover exposed parts of the engine.
- Remove old sealant from grooves on sump (top section) and from sealing surfaces.

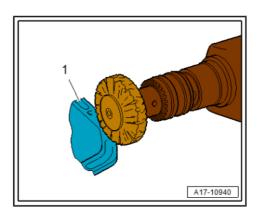


# WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is no permitted this sector. 9099 (S) AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabilities.
- Remove sealant residue from sump (top section) -1- and cylinder block using rotating plastic brush or similar.
- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.



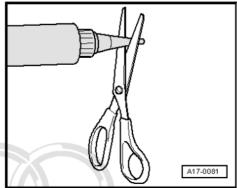




# Note

Note the use-by date of the sealant.

Cut off nozzle of tube at front marking (nozzle  $\varnothing$  approx. 1.5 mm).



# Caution

Make sure lubrication system is not clogged by excess sealant.

- ♦ The sealant bead must not be thicker than specified.
- Apply bead of sealant -arrow- onto clean sealing surface of sump (top section) as shown in illustration.
- The grooves on the sealing surfaces must be completely filled I AG d with sealant.
- The bead of sealant must project 1.5 ... 2.0 mm above the sealing surface.



# Note

The sump (top section) must be installed within 5 minutes after applying the sealant.

- Fit seal -1- and O-ring -2- in retaining frame.
- Check that dowel sleeves are fitted, fit sump (top section) and tighten bolts

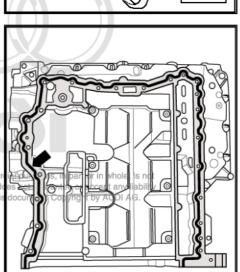
⇒ Fig. ""Sump (top section) - tightening torque and sequence" , page 196

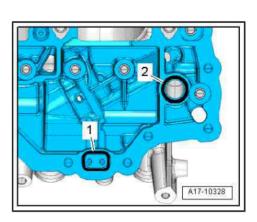
Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install coolant pipes (left-side) ⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing coolant pipes (left-side)", <u>page 239</u> .
- Install oil pump ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing oil pump", page 202
- Install timing chain cover (bottom) ⇒ "1.2.2 Removing and installing timing chain cover (bottom)", page 102.

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view sump/oil pump", page 193
- ⇒ Fig. ""Sump (top section) tightening torque and sequence"" , page 196





A17-10023

#### 1.5 Removing and installing oil pump

# Removing

- Remove sump (bottom section) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)", page 196.
- Remove bolts -1, 2, 3-.
- Using long-nose pliers, push drive shaft back slightly against spring pressure -arrow- and pull oil pump towards front off of drive shaft.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

Renew gasket and O-ring.

- Fit oil pump onto drive shaft and tighten bolts.
- Install sump (bottom section) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing sump (bottom section)" page 196.
- Fill with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.

# Tightening torques

♦ ± "1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump", page 193

# 1.6 Removing and installing oil level and oil temperature sender by G2669 opying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this opcument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# Removing

- Engine oil drained ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- Unplug electrical connector -3-.
- Remove nuts -1- and detach oil level and oil temperature sender - G266- -item 4-.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



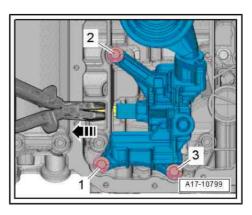
# Note

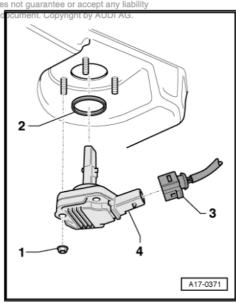
# Renew seal -2-.

Fill with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.

# Tightening torques

⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - sump/oil pump", page 193







#### Engine oil cooler 2

# ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203

# 2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cool-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

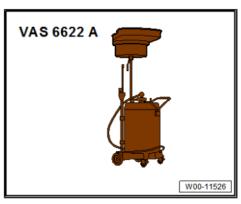
♦ Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-



Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-



♦ Used oil collection and extraction unit - VAS 6622A-



# Removing

Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.

- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath en-
- Use hose clamps -3094- to clamp off coolant hoses -1- and -2-.
- Detach coolant hose -1- and, if necessary, -2- from engine oil cooler; release hose clip to do so.
- Place used oil collection and extraction unit VAS 6622A- underneath.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach engine oil cooler.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Renew gasket.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.



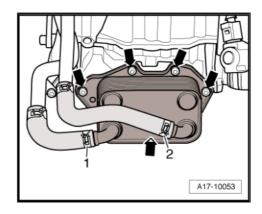
# Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view sump/oil pump", page 193
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

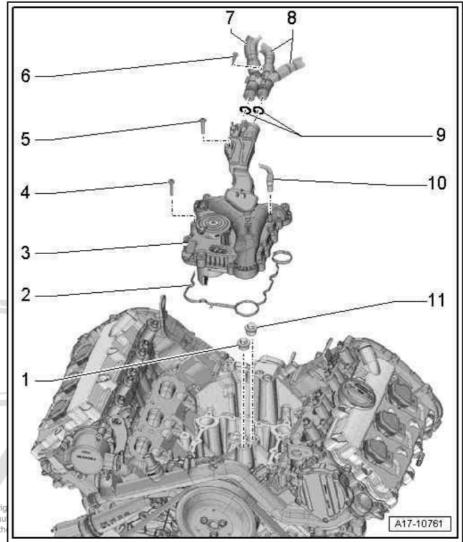


#### 3 Crankcase breather

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view crankcase breather system", page 205
- ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses", page 206
- ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing oil separator", page 206

#### 3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system

- 1 Plug
  - □ 20 Nm
- 2 Gasket
  - Renew
- 3 Cover with oil separator
  - With connection for crankcase breather
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing oil separator", page 206
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 2.5 Nm
- 7 Crankcase breather hose
  - □ To intake manifold
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses", page 206
- 8 Crankcase breather hoses
  - To cylinder head covers
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing crankcase by copyr breather hoses the unless a page 206
- 9 O-rings
  - Renew
- 10 Crankcase breather hose
  - To air pipe
- 11 Plug
  - □ 20 Nm



### 3.2 Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses

# Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

# Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

# Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.

# Continued for all vehicles:

Detach crankcase breather hoses -arrows- from cylinder head



Note

On USA models, it is not possible to detach crankcase breather hoses from cylinder head covers without damaging hoses. Renew crankcase breather hoses after removal.

- Move crankcase breather hoses clear.
- Remove bolt -1- and detach connection with crankcase breather hoses.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

# Renew gaskets and O-rings.

Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292 / install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.

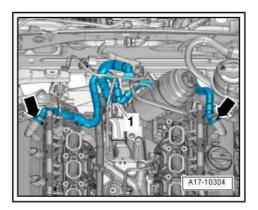
# Tightening torques

⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system", page 205

### 3.3 Removing and installing oil separator

# Removing

Remove crankcase breather hoses ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses", page 206.





# Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

 Remove intake manifold (bottom section, left-side) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.

# Continued for all vehicles:

- Remove coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach bracket for high-pressure pipes and oil separator -1-.

# Installing

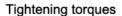
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



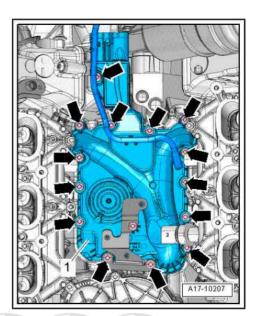
Note

# Renew gasket.

- Install coolant pipe (top) ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244.
- Install intake manifold (bottom section, left-side) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Install crankcase breather hoses ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing crankcase breather hoses", page 206.



⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - crankcase breather system", page 205





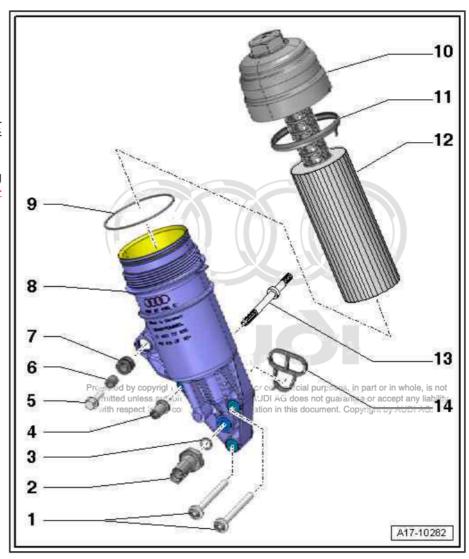
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

# 4 Oil filter/oil pressure switches

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view oil filter housing/oil pressure switches",
- ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing oil pressure switch F22 ", page 209
- ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure F378", page 210
- ⇒ "4.4 Checking oil pressure", page 211
- ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing", page 212
- ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428 <u>", page 214</u>

#### 4.1 Exploded view - oil filter housing/oil pressure switches

- 1 Bolt
  - □ 13 Nm
- 2 Oil pressure switch F22-
  - Opening/closing pressure 2.5 ... 3.2 bar
  - With grey insulation
  - ☐ Checkin Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing oil pressure switch F22 ", page 209
  - □ 20 Nm
- 3 Seal
  - □ Renew
- 4 Flange nut
  - □ 13 Nm
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Distance sleeve
- 7 Rubber grommet
- 8 Oil filter housing
  - With filter bypass valve
  - □ With oil retention valve
  - □ The oil retention valve cannot be renewed
- 9 O-ring
  - □ Renew
  - Installing
    - ⇒ Fig. ""Installing O-ring on oil filter housing"", page 209
- 10 Filler cap
  - □ 25 Nm
- 11 Seal
  - □ Renew

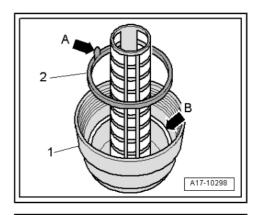




- □ Removing and installing ⇒ Fig. ""Renewing seal on sealing cap"", page 209
- 12 Oil filter element
  - ☐ Removing and installing ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- 13 Bolt
  - □ 16 Nm
- 14 Gasket
  - □ Renew

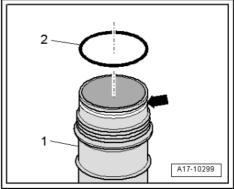
# Renewing seal on sealing cap

- Take hold of tab -arrow A- and pull seal -2- out of sealing cap Projected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
- Install new seal so that semi-circular profile fits in groove -arrow B- in sealing cap.
- Lug -arrow A- must point upwards.



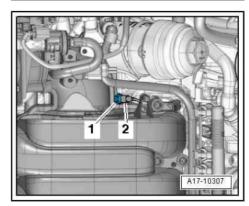
# Installing O-ring on oil filter housing

Fit O-ring -2- in groove -arrow- on oil filter housing -1-.



Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378-

- 1 Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure F378-
- Electrical connector
- ♦ Opening/closing pressure 0.75 ... 1.05 bar
- With grey insulation
- ◆ Check in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 210
- ♦ 20 Nm



### 4.2 Removing and installing oil pressure switch - F22-

# Removing

Remove engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.



# Note

Place a cloth beneath the oil filter housing to catch escaping oil.

- Unplug electrical connector -arrow-.
- Unscrew oil pressure switch F22- .

# Installing

Protected by copyright. Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:unless authorized out of the following:unless authorized outhorized outhorized outhorized outhorized outhorized outhorized outhorized outho



# Note

- Renew seal.
- Fit the new oil pressure switch F22- into the connection immediately to avoid loss of oil.
- Check oil level ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411.

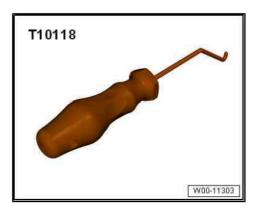
# **Tightening torques**

⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - oil filter housing/oil pressure switches", page 208

## 4.3 Removing and installing oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378-

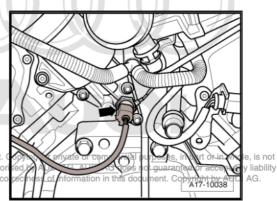
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly tool - T10118-



Articulated wrench, 24 mm - T40175-







#### Removing

- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64
- Press noise insulation to the side.
- Use assembly tool T10118- to unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Use articulated wrench (24 mm) T40175- to unscrew oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378- -item 1-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

#### Renew seal.

Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

### Tightening torques

⇒ Fig. "" Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure -F378-

#### 4.4 Checking oil pressure

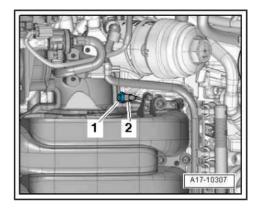
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Oil pressure tester - V.A.G 1342-



#### Procedure

- Oil level OK
- Engine oil temperature approx. 80 °C
- Remove oil pressure switch F22-⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing oil pressure switch F22", page
- Connect oil pressure tester V.A.G 1342- to bore for oil presrcial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability sure switch.
- Screw oil pressure switch wiF22 into oil pressure tester in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Start engine.
- Minimum oil pressure at idling speed: 1.2 bar.
- Minimum oil pressure at 2000 rpm: 1.5 bar.



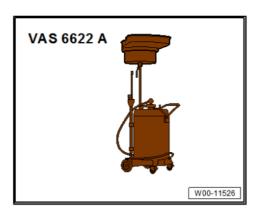
# Installing

- Install oil pressure switch - F22-⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing oil pressure switch F22", page <u> 209</u> .

#### 4.5 Removing and installing oil filter housing

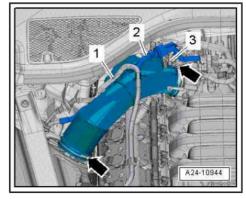
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Used oil collection and extraction unit - VAS 6622A-

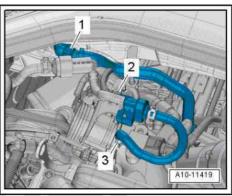


### Removing

- Remove oil filter element ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411 .
- Extract engine oil from oil filter housing using used oil collection and extraction unit - VAS 6622A- .
- Move fuel hose -1- and hose -2- from activated charcoal filter clear at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.

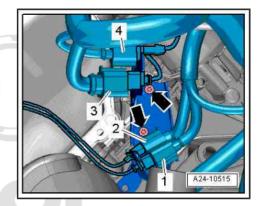


- Release hose clip -1- and disconnect vacuum hose from plenum chamber partition panel.
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 - N80- and detach vacuum hose -3-.
- Detach activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80- from bracket and move it clear to the side with hoses still attached.





- Detach electrical connectors -1 ... 4- from bracket and move clear to side.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and bracket and move bracket clear.



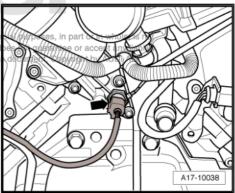


Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comme permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG

Place a cloth beneath the oil filter housing to catch escaping oil!ion in the

Unplug electrical connector -arrow- on oil pressure switch -F22- .

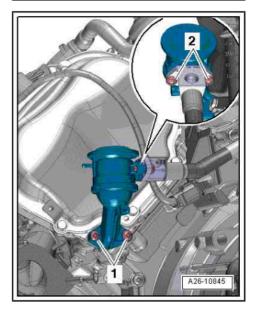


- Remove bolts -2- and push secondary air hose to rear.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Remove nut -1- and threaded pin, and detach oil filter housing. Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



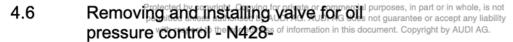
Note

Renew seals, gasket and O-ring.

- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install oil filter element, fill up with engine oil and check oil level ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411 .

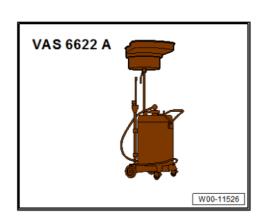
#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view oil filter housing/oil pressure switches", page 208
- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view secondary air system", page 352
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips" page 285



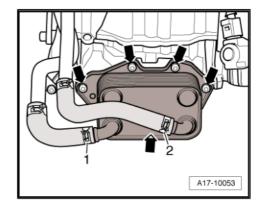
Special tools and workshop equipment required

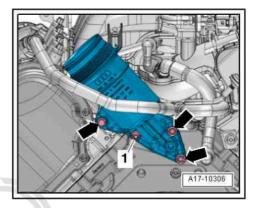
◆ Used oil collection and extraction unit - VAS 6622A-



### Removing

- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Place used oil collection and extraction unit VAS 6622A- underneath.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and tie up engine oil cooler to one side with coolant hoses -1- and -2- attached.







- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -3- and detach valve for oil pressure control -N428- -item 4-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



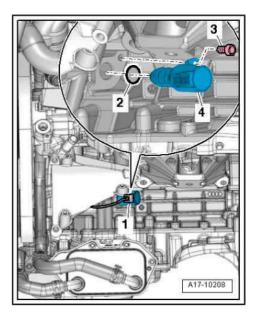
Note

Fit new O-ring -2-.

 Install engine oil cooler ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing engine oil cooler", page 203.

## Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. "" Valve for oil pressure control -N428- "", page 83
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation





# 19 – Cooling

## Cooling system/coolant

- ⇒ "1.1 Connection diagram coolant hoses", page 216
- ⇒ "1.2 Checking cooling system for leaks", page 220
- ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221

#### 1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses

⇒ "1.1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses, vehicles without auxiliary heater", page 216

⇒ "1.1.2 Connection diagram - coolant hoses, vehicles with auxiliary heater", page 218

#### 1.1.1 Connection diagram - coolant hoses, vehicles without auxiliary heater



Note

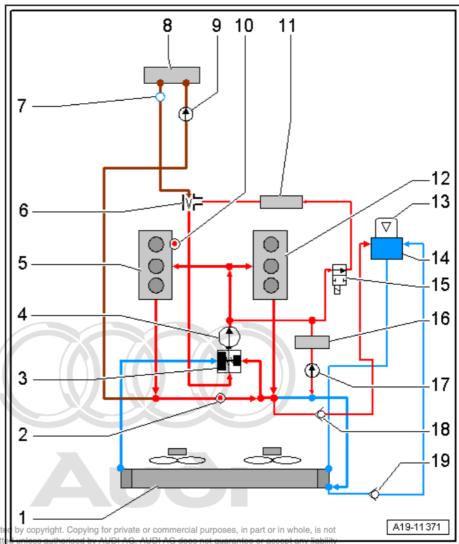
- Blue = Large coolant circuit.
- Red = Small coolant circuit.
- Brown = Heating circuit.
- Arrows show direction of coolant flow.



- 1 Radiator
- 2 Coolant temperature sender - G62-
- 3 Thermostat
- 4 Coolant pump
- 5 Cylinder head
  - □ Cylinder bank 1 (rightside)
- 6 Suction-jet pump
  - For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
  - Colour of housing: grey
- 7 Bleeder screw
- 8 Heat exchanger for heater
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Front air conditioning unit; Removing and installing heat exchanger
- 9 Coolant circulation pump -V50-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Coolant circuit: Overview of fitting locations coolant circuit
- 10 Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation in respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. - G694-



- ☐ For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34 ; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF cooler /⇒ Rep. gr. 37; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF cooler.
- 12 Cylinder head
  - ☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- 13 Filler cap
  - ☐ Checking pressure relief valve ⇒ page 221
- 14 Coolant expansion tank
- 15 Gearbox oil cooling valve N509-
  - ☐ For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
- 16 Engine oil cooler
- 17 Continued coolant circulation pump V51-
  - On vehicles for hot countries only
- 18 Non-return valve
  - Located in coolant hose



#### 19 - Non-return valve

Located in coolant hose

#### 1.1.2 Connection diagram - coolant hoses, vehicles with auxiliary heater

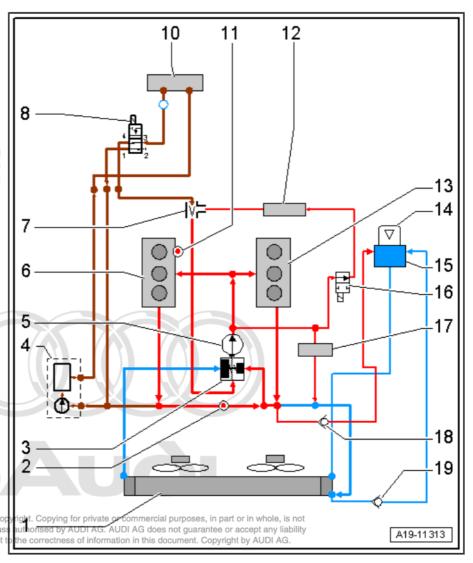


#### Note

- Blue = Large coolant circuit.
- Red = Small coolant circuit.
- Brown = Heating circuit.
- Arrows show direction of coolant flow.

#### 1 - Radiator

- 2 Coolant temperature sender - G62-
- 3 Thermostat
- 4 Auxiliary heater
  - With circulation pump -
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Rep. gr. 82; Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Removing and installing auxiliary/ supplementary heater
- 5 Coolant pump
- 6 Cylinder head
  - Cylinder bank 1 (rightside)
- 7 Suction-jet pump
  - For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
  - Colour of housing: grey
- 8 Heater coolant shut-off valve - N279-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Coolant circuit Over-by co view of fitting locations coolant circuit



### 9 - Bleeder screw

## 10 - Heat exchanger for heater

□ Removing and installing ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Front air conditioning unit; Removing and installing heat exchanger

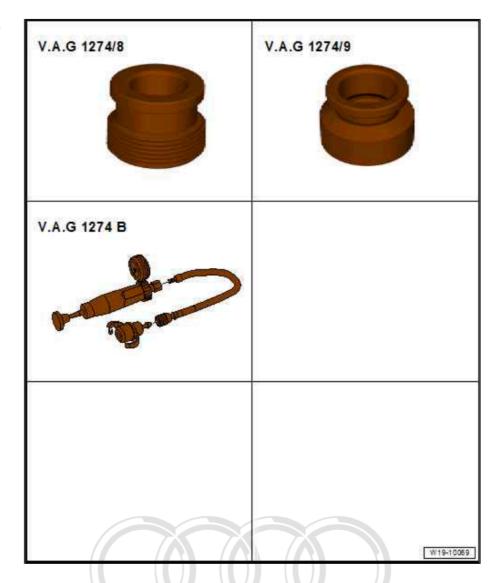


- 11 Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694-
- 12 ATF cooler
  - ☐ For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF cooler /⇒ Rep. gr. 37; ATF circuit; Removing and installing ATF cooler.
- 13 Cylinder head
  - ☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
- 14 Filler cap
  - ☐ Checking pressure relief valve ⇒ page 221
- 15 Coolant expansion tank
- 16 Gearbox oil cooling valve N509-
  - ☐ For vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive) or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5
- 17 Engine oil cooler
- 18 Non-return valve
  - Located in coolant hose
- 19 Non-return valve
  - Located in coolant hose



#### 1.2 Checking cooling system for leaks

Special tools and workshop equipment required



- Adapter for cooling system tester V.A.G 1274/8-
- Adapter for cooling system tester V.A.G 1274/9-
- Cooling system tester V.A.G 1274 B-



#### Procedure

Engine must be warm.



#### WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

Danger of scalding skin and other parts of the body.

- Put on protective gloves.
- Put on safety goggles.
- Cover filler cap on expansion tank with a cloth and open carefully to release pressure.
- Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.
- Fit cooling system tester V.A.G 1274 B- with adapter -V.A.G 1274/8- onto coolant expansion tank.
- Using hand pump on cooling system tester, build up a pressure of approx. 1.5 bar.
- The pressure should not drop more than 0.2 bar within 10 minutes.
- If the pressure drops more than 0.2 bar, locate leak and eliminate fault.

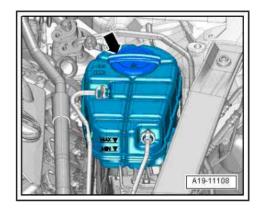


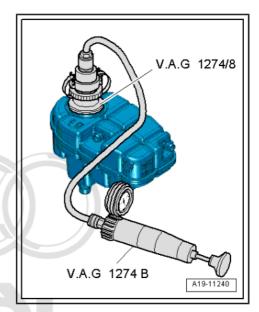
### Note

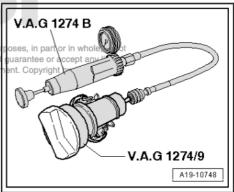
The drop in pressure of 0.2 bar within 10 minutes is caused by the decrease in coolant temperature. The colder the engine is, the less the pressure will fall. If necessary, check again when the engine is cold.

#### Checking pressure relief valve in filler cap

- Fit cooling system tester V.A.G 1274 B- with adapter -V.A.G 1274/9- onto filler captected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
- Build up pressure with hand pumpeon cooling system tester. this document
- The pressure relief valve should open at a pressure of 1.4 ... 1.6 bar.
- Renew filler cap if pressure relief valve does not open as described.

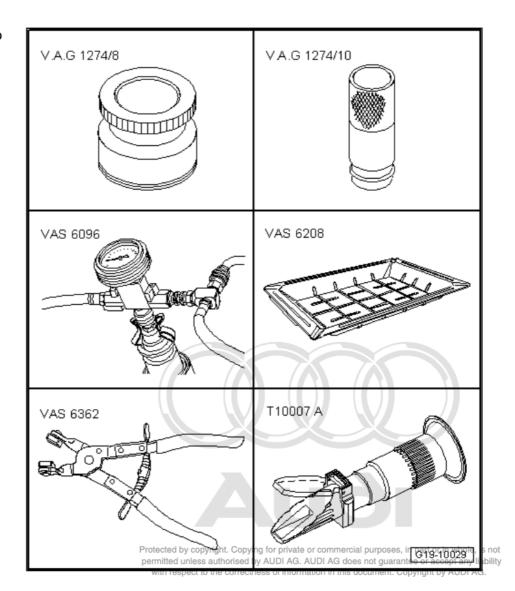






#### 1.3 Draining and filling cooling system

## Special tools and workshop equipment required



- Adapter for cooling system tester V.A.G 1274/8-
- Pipe for cooling system tester V.A.G 1274/10-
- Cooling system charge unit VAS 6096-
- Drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208-
- Hose clip pliers VAS 6362-
- ♦ Refractometer T10007A-

## Draining



## WARNING

Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

♦ Even when the ignition is switched off, the radiator fans can start up without warning due to accumulated heat in the engine compartment, etc.



### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

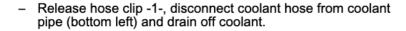
- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is
- To allow pressure to dissipate, cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with cloth and open carefully.

- with respect to the correctness of information in this Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.
- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath en-
- Remove drain plug -1- and drain off coolant.



## Note

Disregard -item 2-.





## Note

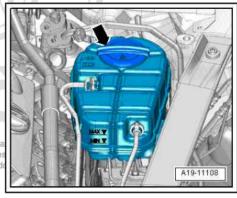
- Disregard -item 2-.
- The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.

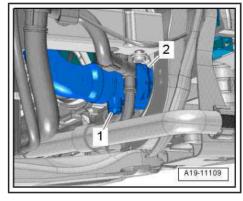
Ignition switched off.

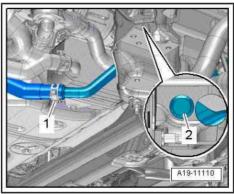


## Caution

To ensure optimal corrosion protection, only distilled water may be mixed with coolant additives.





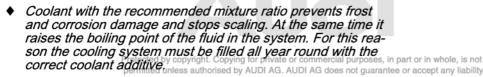






### Note

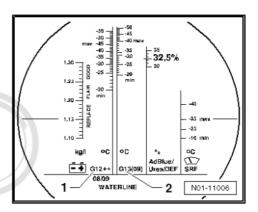
- The effectiveness of the coolant is greatly influenced by the quality of the water with which it is mixed. Because water may contain different substances depending on the country or even the region, the water quality to be used for cooling systems has been specified. Distilled water meets all the requirements and is therefore recommended for use when topping up or filling up with coolant.
- Use only coolant additives listed in the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue (ETKA) . If you use other coolant additives, this can significantly impair in particular the corrosion protection effect. The resulting damage could lead to loss of coolant and consequently to serious engine damage.



- Because of its high boiling point, the coolant improves engine reliability under heavy loads, particularly in countries with tropical climates.
- The refractometer T10007A- MUST be used to determine the current level of frost protection.
- The mixture must guarantee frost protection down to at least -25 °C (in countries with arctic climate: down to -36 °C). The amount of antifreeze should only be increased if greater frost protection is required in very cold climates. This must only be down to -48 °C, however, as otherwise the cooling efficiency of the coolant is impaired.
- The coolant concentration must not be reduced by adding water even in warmer seasons and in warmer countries. Frost protection must be provided to at least -25 °C.
- Read off the level of frost protection on the scale for the relevant coolant additive.
- The temperature indicated on the refractometer T10007Acorresponds to the temperature at which the first ice crystals can form in the coolant.
- Do not reuse coolant.
- Only use water/coolant additive as a lubricant for coolant hoses.

#### Recommended mixture ratio for coolant

- Coolant (40 %) and water (60 %) for frost protection to -25 °C
- Coolant (50 %) and water (50 %) for frost protection to -36 °C
- Coolant ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue



#### Procedure

Close drain plug -1-.

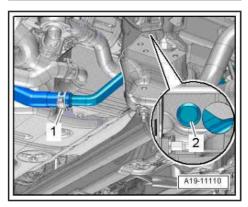
A19-11109

Connect coolant hose to coolant pipe (bottom left) with hose clip -1-.



Note

The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.



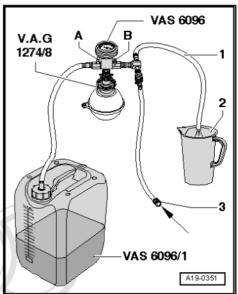
- Fill reservoir of cooling system charge unit VAS 6096- with 12 litres of premixed coolant (according to recommended ratio ⇒ page 224 ).
- Fit adapter for cooling system tester V.A.G 1274/8- onto coolant expansion tank.
- Attach cooling system charge unit VAS 6096- to adapter -V.A.G 1274/8- .
- Run vent hose -1- into a small container -2-.



### Note

The vented air draws along a small amount of coolant, which should be collected.

- Close both valves -A- and -B- (turn lever at right angles to direction of flow).
- Connect hose -3- to compressed air supply.
- Pressure: 7 ... 10 bar.



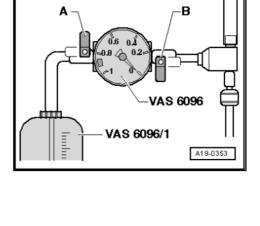


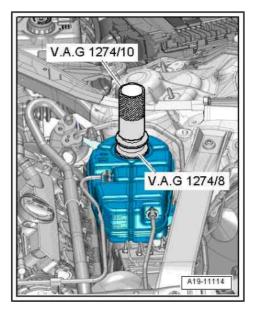
- Open valve -B- by setting lever in direction of flow.
- The suction jet pump generates a vacuum in the cooling system. The needle on the gauge should move into the green zone.
- Also briefly open valve -A- (turn lever in direction of flow) so that hose on reservoir of -VAS 6096- can fill with coolant.
- Close valve -A- again.
- Leave valve -B- open for another 2 minutes.
- The suction jet pump will continue generating a vacuum in the cooling system. The needle on the gauge should remain in the green zone.
- Close valve -B-.
- The needle on the gauge should stop in the green zone. The vacuum level in the cooling system is then sufficient for subsequent filling.



#### Note

- If the needle does not reach the green zone, repeat the proc-
- Check cooling system for leaks if the vacuum is not maintained.
- Detach compressed air hose.
- Open valve -A-.
- The vacuum in the cooling system causes the coolant to be drawn out of the reservoir of the cooling system charge unit. In part or in whole, is not VAS 6096-; the cooling system is then filled. n in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Detach cooling system charge unit VAS 6096- from adapter -V.A.G 1274/8- on coolant expansion tank.
- Attach pipe -V.A.G 1274/10- onto adapter -V.A.G 1274/8- .
- Fill up with coolant until pipe for cooling system tester is filled. If required, add further coolant when performing bleeding procedure.







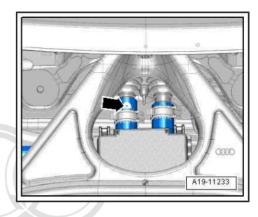
Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .

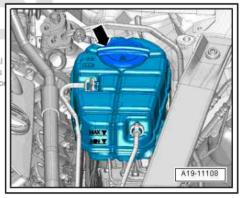


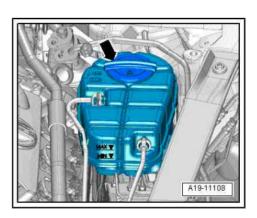
#### Note

Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.

- Release coolant hose going to heat exchanger and pull back hose until coolant flows out at bleeder hole -arrow- in coolant hose.
- Push coolant hose back onto connection and secure with hose
- On vehicles with auxiliary heater, switch heater on (for about 30 seconds) and then off again.
- Close filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank (make sure it engages).
- Start engine.
- Set temperature to "HI" for all zones and select lowest blower doe speed (=0). with respect to the correctness of information in this d
- Switch off air conditioner compressor (press AC button).
- LED in button should not light up.
- Run engine for 3 minutes at 2000 rpm.
- Allow engine to run at idling speed until both large coolant hoses at radiator become warm.
- Run engine for 2 minutes at 2000 rpm.
- Switch off ignition and allow engine to cool down.
- Install noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insula-
- Install plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover .
- Check coolant level.
- The coolant level must be at the MAX marking when the engine is cold.
- The coolant level can be above the MAX marking when the engine is warm.





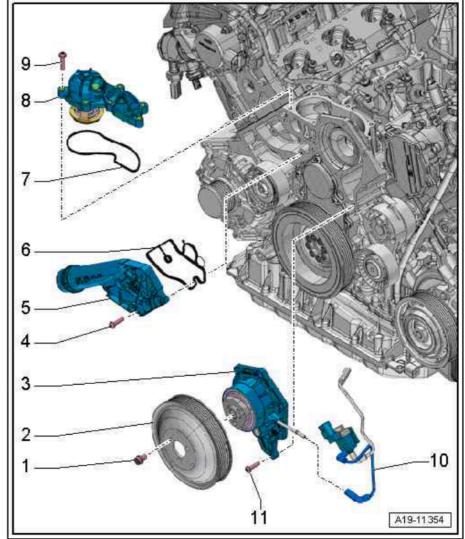


#### 2 Coolant pump/thermostat assembly

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view coolant pump/thermostat", page 228
- ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view electric coolant pump", page 229
- ⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing electric coolant pump", page 229
- ⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing coolant pump", page 231
- ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing thermostat", page 232
- ⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing coolant temperature sender G62 <u>", page 233</u>
- ⇒ "2.7 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation G694", page 234
- ⇒ "2.8 Removing and installing coolant valves", page 235

#### 2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump/thermostat

- 1 Bolt
  - □ 20 Nm
- 2 Poly V-belt pulley
  - For coolant pump
- 3 Coolant pump
  - With gasket
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.4 Removing and installing coolant pump", page 231
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 5 Connection
  - For coolant hose
- 6 Gasket
  - □ Renew
- 7 Gasket
  - □ Renew
- 8 Thermostat
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing thermostat", page 232
  - Starts to open at approx. 87 °C
  - ☐ Fully open at approx. 102 °C
  - Opening travel at least 8
- 9 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm

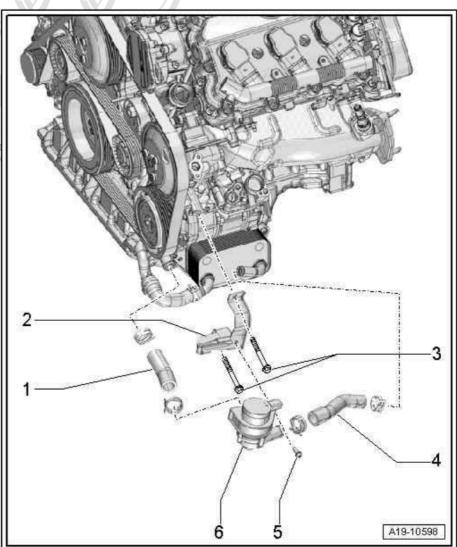


permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 10 Solenoid for coolant circuit N492-
- 11 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm

#### Exploded view - electric coolant pump 2.2

- 1 Coolant hose
- 2 Bracket
- 3 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 4 Coolant hose
- 5 Bolt
  - 4 Amitted unless authorised by AL
- 6 Continued coolant circulation pump - V51-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.3 Removing and installing electric coolant pump", page 229



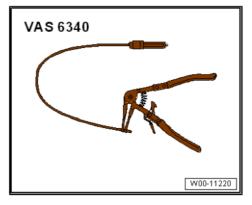
#### 2.3 Removing and installing electric coolant pump

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-



Hose clip pliers - VAS 6340-



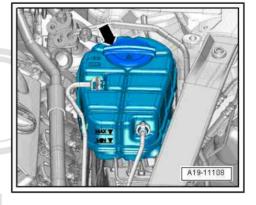
### Removing



### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot.
- Cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with a cloth and open carefully to dissipate pressure.
- Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.
- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .





- Unplug electrical connector -2- and remove bolt -1-.
- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath engine.
- Release hose clips -arrows- and disconnect continued coolant circulation pump - V51- from coolant hoses.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Do not reuse coolant.
- Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

#### Tightening torques

- ♦ ⇒ "2.2 Exploded view electric coolant pump", page 229
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 2.4 Removing and installing coolant pump

Special tools and workshop equipment required

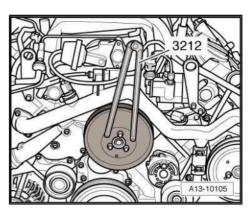
♦ Pin wrench - 3212-

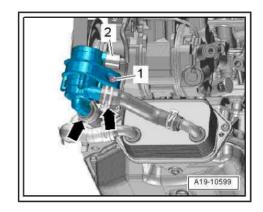
rivate **3212**mercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Protected by copyright. Copying for permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



### Removing

- Drain coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.
- Detach poly V-belt from coolant pump, but do not remove completely
  - ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66
- Slacken bolts for coolant pump pulley (counterhold with pin wrench - 3212- ).
- Remove bolts and take off poly V-belt pulley.





Disconnect vacuum hose -1-.



Note

Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.

Remove bolts -arrows- for coolant pump and detach coolant pump to the side.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Clean surfaces; they must be free of oil and grease.
- Install poly V-belt ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66



Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

Tightening torques

⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump/thermostat", page 228

#### 2.5 Removing and installing thermostat

### Removing

Drain coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.

Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

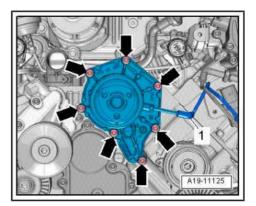
Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

Operation of the control of the co Remove intake manifold (top section) information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section). page 294.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

Remove coolant pipe (front) ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)",





- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Detach coolant thermostat with hose connection.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



## Note

- Renew seals and/or gaskets.
- When removing and installing the thermostat, make sure that are or of the needle is fitted correctly (conical end fitted in wax expanage. AUD sion element of thermostat). If necessary, push thermostat information needle as far as possible into wax expansion element.
- Install coolant pipe (front) ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)", page 241.
- Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292 / install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.



### Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

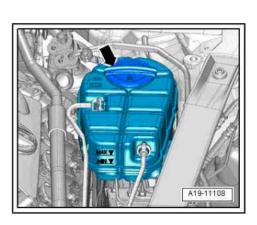
## **Tightening torques**

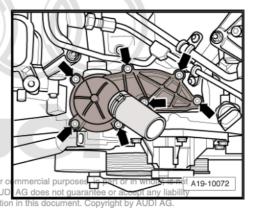
♦ = "2.1 Exploded view - coolant pump/thermostat", page 228

#### 2.6 Removing and installing coolant temperature sender - G62-

### Removing

- Engine cold.
- To relieve residual pressure in cooling system, open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank briefly and then close cap again (it should click into place).
- Remove engine cover panel (front) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.





Unplug electrical connector -2- at coolant temperature sender



Note

Place a cloth underneath to catch escaping coolant.

Pull off retaining clip -1- and detach coolant temperature sender - G62- .

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

- Fit new O-ring.
- Insert new coolant temperature sender G62- immediately into connection to avoid loss of coolant.
- Check coolant level ⇒ page 227.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64

### 2.7 Removing and installing temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694-

### Removing

Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

Remove fuel rail (right-side) ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail", page 300.

### Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

PRemove intake manifold (bottom section sight-side) whole, is not mmiles Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom) section tion)" page 296

#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unscrew temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- -item 1-

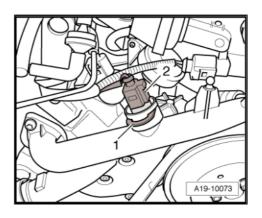
#### Installing

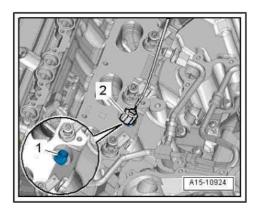
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Install intake manifold (bottom section, right-side) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Install fuel rail (right-side) ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail", page 300.

## Tightening torques

⇒ Fig. "" Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation -G694- - tightening torque"", page 238





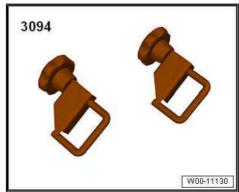


#### 2.8 Removing and installing coolant valves

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-





♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI



### Removing

- Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield -3-.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Clamp off coolant hoses using hose clamps -3094-, release hose clips -2- and disconnect coolant hoses.
- Detach gearbox oil cooling valve N509- .

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

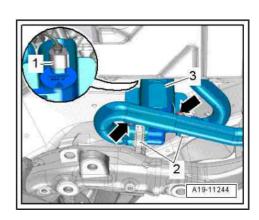


### Note

- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Do not reuse coolant.
- Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

### Tightening torques

- ♦ 3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation



## 3 Coolant pipes

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing coolant pipes", page 239

#### 3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes

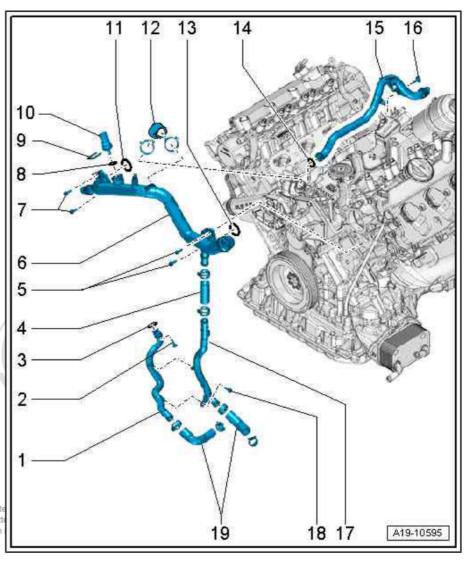


Note

The arrow markings on coolant pipes and on ends of hoses must align.

## Coolant pipes on engine

- 1 Coolant pipe (left-side)
  - ☐ Remove and install together with -item 17-⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing coolant pipes (left-side)", page 239
- 2 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 3 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 4 Connecting hose
- 5 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Coolant pipe (front)
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)", page 241
- 7 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 8 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 9 Retaining clip
- 10 Coolant temperature sender - G62-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.6 Removing and installing coolant temperac ature sender G62 ", permi page 233
- 11 Seal
  - □ Renew
- 12 Coolant hose
- 13 Seal
  - □ Renew
- 14 O-ring
  - □ Renew

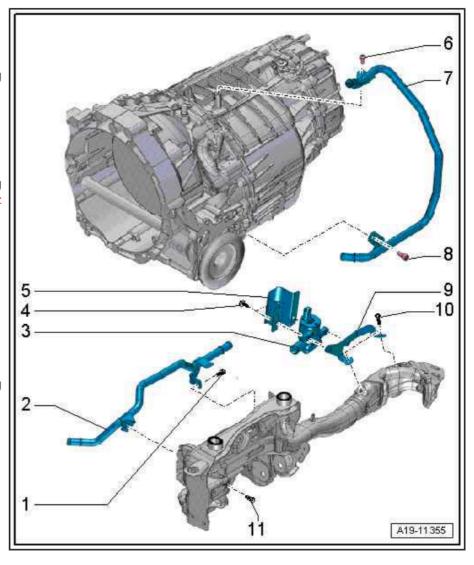




- 15 Coolant pipe (top)
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244
- 16 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 17 Coolant pipe (left-side)
  - □ Remove and install together with -item 1-
    - ⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing coolant pipes (left-side)", page 239
- 18 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 19 Coolant hoses

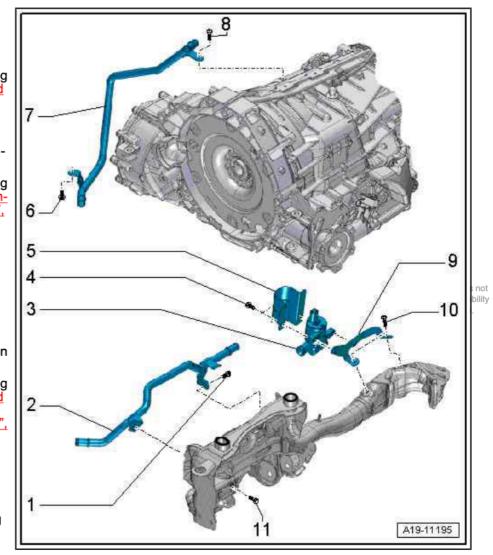
Coolant pipes on multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive)

- 1 Bolt
  - □ 22 Nm
- 2 Coolant pipe (bottom left)
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.2 Removing and installing coolant pipe (bottom left)", page 240
- 3 Gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "2.8 Removing and installing coolant valves", page 235
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 5 Heat shield
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 7 Coolant pipe (left-side) on gearbox
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.5 Řemoving and installing coolant pipe (left-side) on gearbox", page 246
- 8 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 9 Bracket
  - For gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-
- 10 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 11 Bolt
  - □ 22 Nm



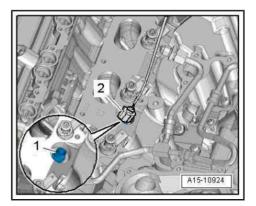
Coolant pipes to 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5

- 1 Bolt
  - □ 22 Nm
- 2 Coolant pipe (bottom left)
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.2 Removing and installing coolant pipe (bottom left)", page 240
- 3 Gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.8 Removing and installing coolant valves", page 235
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 5 Heat shield
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 7 Coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2.6 Removing and installing coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox", page 248
- 8 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 9 Bracket
  - ☐ For gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-
- 10 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 11 Bolt
  - □ 22 Nm



Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- tightening torque

Tighten temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694- -item 1- to 3 Nm.





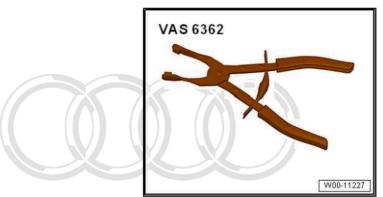
#### 3.2 Removing and installing coolant pipes

- ⇒ "3.2.1 Removing and installing coolant pipes (left-side)", page 239
- ⇒ "3.2.2 Removing and installing coolant pipe (bottom left)", page
- ⇒ "3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)", page 241
- ⇒ "3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)", page 244
- ⇒ "3.2.5 Removing and installing coolant pipe (left-side) on gearbox", page 246
- ⇒ "3.2.6 Removing and installing coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox", page 248

#### 3.2.1 Removing and installing coolant pipes (left-side)

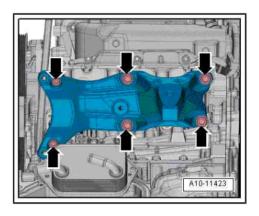
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



#### Removing

- Drain coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.
- Detach poly V-belt from air conditioner compressoright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt"|trepages66 horised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Remove air conditioner compressor ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket .
- Remove engine mounting (left-side) ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings", page 55.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach engine support (left-side) with bracket for air conditioner compressor.



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Release hose clips -1- and -2- and disconnect coolant hoses from coolant pipes.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

- Fit new O-ring.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Clean and smoothen sealing surface for O-ring.
- Lubricate O-ring with coolant and slide onto coolant pipe.
- Install engine support (left-side) with bracket for air conditioner compressor and engine mounting (left-side) ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view - assembly mountings", page 52
- Install poly V-belt ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66



Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

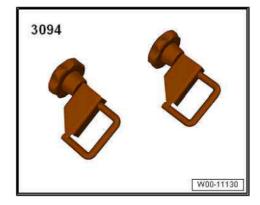
### Tightening torques

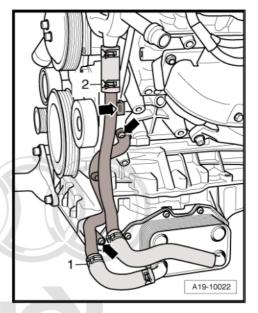
- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit

#### 3.2.2 Removing and installing coolant pipe (bottom left)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

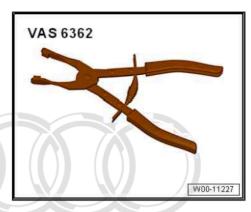
♦ Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-







Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



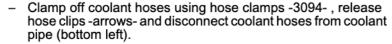
#### Removing

Remove engine mounting (left-side) ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings", page 55.



Note

Place a cloth under coolant pipe to catch escaping coolant authorised by



Detach coolant pipe (bottom left).



Note

- Disregard items -1 and 2-.
- The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.

### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

Install engine mounting (left-side) ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing engine mountings", page 55.



Note

Do not reuse coolant.

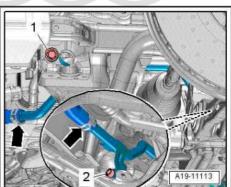
Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

Tightening torques

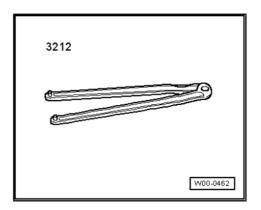
♦ 3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236

#### 3.2.3 Removing and installing coolant pipe (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required



Pin wrench - 3212-

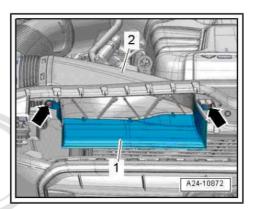


Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-



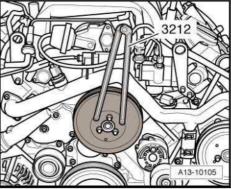
## Removing

- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach air ducts -1- and -2-
- Detach poly V-belt from coolant pump, but do not remove completely
  - ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.



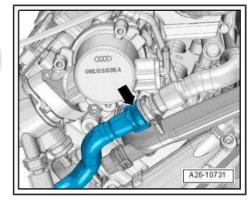
- Slacken bolts for coolant pump pulley (counterhold with pin wrench 3212- ).
- Remove bolts and take off poly V-belt pulley.







Press release tabs and detach secondary air hose -arrow- to front from bracket.





- Unclip solenoid for coolant circuit p.N492 conitem: 4p from, brack tin who permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept an with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUD
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at coolant temperature sender - G62- .
- Lift retaining clips -1, 5-, release hose clips -3, 6, 7- and detach coolant hoses.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove coolant pipe (front).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

- Renew seals and O-rings.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Clean or smoothen sealing surfaces for seals and O-rings.
- Lubricate seals and O-rings with coolant and slide onto coolant pipe.
- Connect coolant hoses with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector"", page 252.
- Install poly V-belt ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.
- Install lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior: Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.



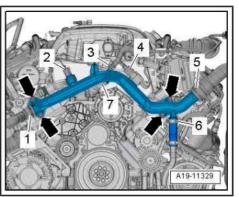
### Note

#### Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view coolant pump/thermostat", page 228
- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284



#### 3.2.4 Removing and installing coolant pipe (top)

## Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

Drain coolant ⇒ "1.3 Draining and filling cooling system", page 221.

#### Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

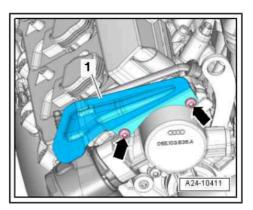
Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

### Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.

### Continued for all vehicles:

Remove bolts -arrows- and detach guard plate -1- for highpressure pipe.



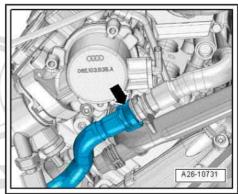
Vehicles with secondary air system: press release tabs and detach secondary air hose -arrow- from bracket towards front.



### WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

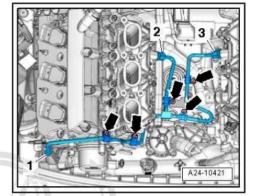
- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system.
- Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.



Reduce fuel pressure in high-pressure systempying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not 3. "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section to page in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. <u> 282</u> .



- Unscrew connection -1-.
- Unscrew union nuts -2- and -3- (counterhold connection).
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- on retaining clips and detach highpressure pipe.

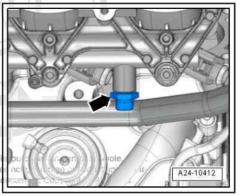


- Detach connection -arrow- for high-pressure pipe.



Note

The illustration shows the 2.8 ltr. engine.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerce permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do with respect to the correctness of information in this



### Note

Place a cloth under coolant pipe to catch escaping coolant.

- Detach coolant hose -2- from coolant pipe.
- Remove bolt -1- and pull coolant pipe rearwards out of cylinder block -arrow-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### Note

### Fit new O-rings.

- Clean and smoothen sealing surface for O-ring.
- Lubricate O-ring with coolant and slide onto coolant pipe.
- Install high-pressure pipe ⇒ "6.3 Removing and installing high-pressure pipe", page 317.
- Install intake manifold '3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292 / install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.
- Connect coolant hoses with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector"",



### Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

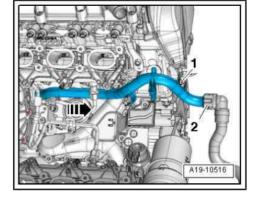
### Tightening torques

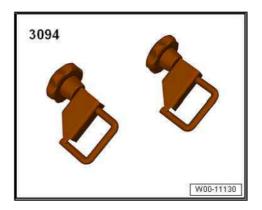
⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236

#### 3.2.5 Removing and installing coolant pipe (left-side) on gearbox

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094-





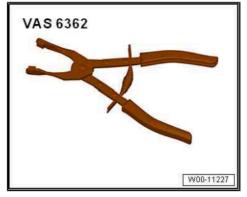
Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-





#### Removing

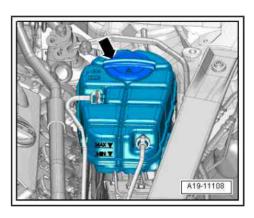
- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.
- Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.



#### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

- ♦ The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is
- To allow pressure to dissipate, cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with cloth and open carefully.
- Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.



- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath en-
- Clamp off coolant hoses using hose clamps -3094-, release hose clips -1, 2- and disconnect coolant hoses.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove coolant pipe.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.
- Check coolant level ⇒ page 223.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 3.2.6 Removing and installing coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox

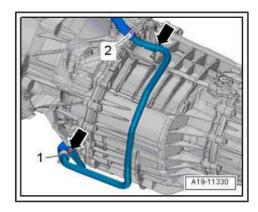
Special tools and workshop equipment required

 Hose clamps, up to 25 mm - 3094. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

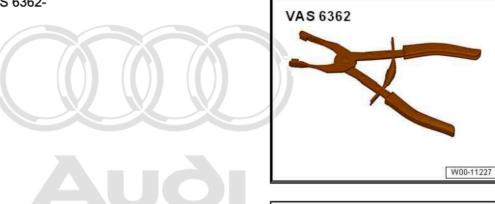


Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-



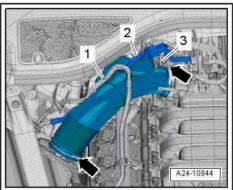


Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-

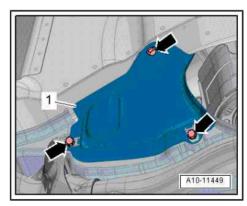


#### Removing

- Move fuel hose Pitheand hose gh2 of from ractivated charcoal filter in part clear at air pipe. permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (right-side) -1- on subframe.

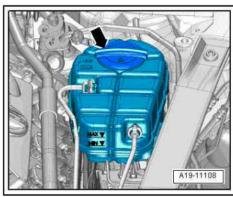




#### WARNING

Risk of scalding due to hot steam and hot coolant.

- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot.
- To allow pressure to dissipate, cover filler cap on coolant expansion tank with cloth and open carefully.
- Open filler cap -arrow- on coolant expansion tank.
- Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- under connec-
- Clamp off coolant hose -1- with hose clamp -3094- .



- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Clamp off coolant hose -3- using hose clamp -3094-, release hose clip and disconnect coolant hose from coolant pipe on right side of gearbox.
- Release hose clip -2- and detach coolant pipe going to wheel housing (right-side).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



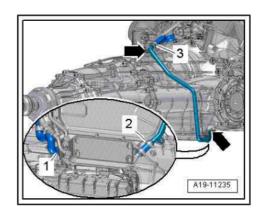
#### Note

Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Check coolant level ⇒ page 223.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"",
- Heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation



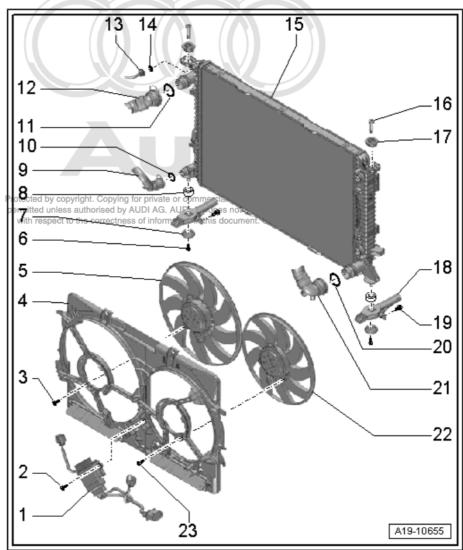


#### Radiator/radiator fans 4

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view radiator/radiator fans", page 251
- ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing radiator", page 252
- ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing radiator cowl", page 257
- ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing radiator fan V7", page 263
- ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing radiator fan control unit J293", page 263

#### 4.1 Exploded view - radiator/radiator fans

- 1 Radiator fan control unit -J293-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.5 Removing and installing radiator fan control unit J293", page 263
- 2 Bolt
  - □ 4.5 Nm
- 3 Bolt
  - □ 5 Nm
- 4 Radiator cowl
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing radiator cowl", page 257
- 5 Radiator fan V7-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.4 Removing and installing radiator fan V7", page 263
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 3.5 Nm
- 7 Support pad
- 8 Rubber mounting
  - For radiator
- 9 Coolant hose
  - ☐ Lift retaining clip to de-
  - Connecting to radiator ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plugin connector", page 252
- 10 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 11 O-ring
  - Renew
- 12 Coolant hose
  - □ Lift retaining clip to detach
  - □ Connecting to radiator ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector", page 252



13 - C	Coolant hos
	To coolan

t expansion tank

14 - O-ring

□ Renew

15 - Radiator

□ Remove and install together with radiator cowl ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing radiator", page 252

☐ If renewed, refill system with fresh coolant

16 - Retaining pin

Use screwdriver to release and pull off

17 - Rubber buffer

18 - Radiator bracket

19 - Bolt

□ 4.5 Nm

20 - O-ring

□ Renew

21 - Coolant hose

□ Lift retaining clip to detach

□ Connecting to radiator ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector"", page 252

22 - Radiator fan 2 - V177-

Protected by copyright. Copyring for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Perm Depending on equipment UDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Removing and installing  $\Rightarrow$  4.4 Removing and installing radiator fan V7 ", page 263

23 - Bolt

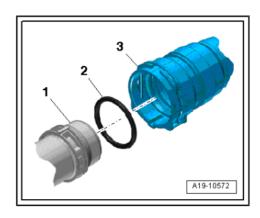
□ 5 Nm

Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector

Remove old O-ring -2- from coolant hose -3-.

Lightly lubricate new O-ring with coolant and fit O-ring in cool-

- Press coolant hose onto connection -1- until it engages audi-
- Press coolant hose in again and then pull to check that plugin connector is correctly engaged.



#### 4.2 Removing and installing radiator



Note

Radiator and radiator cowl can only be removed and installed together as one unit.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-

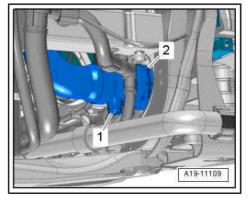
VAS 6208 W00-11209

♦ Hose clip pliers - VAS 6362-

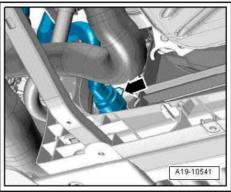


#### Removing

- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Remove impact bar ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing impact bar .
- Place drip tray for workshop hoist VAS 6208- beneath en-
- Remove drain plug -1- and drain off coolant.
- Lift retaining clip -2- and disconnect coolant hose from radiator.



- Detach connection from radiator (lift retaining clip -arrow-).

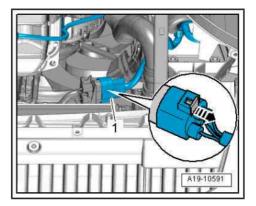


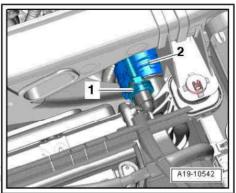


### WARNING

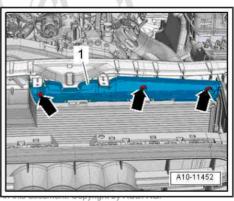
Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

- ◆ Unplug electrical connectors before starting to work in the area of radiator cowl.
- Take electrical connector -1- for radiator fan out of bracket and unplug connector (push retainer to the rear -arrow- and press down release catch).
- Lift retaining clips -1- and -2- and detach connection from radiator.





Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.



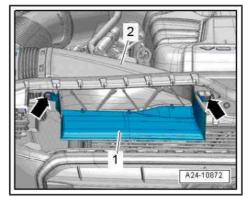
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or c permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUD with respect to the correctness of information

Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.

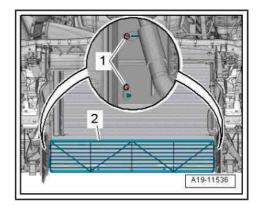


Note

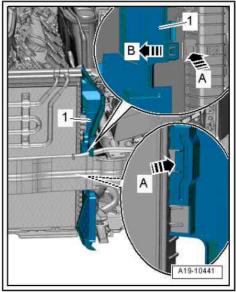
Disregard -item 2-.



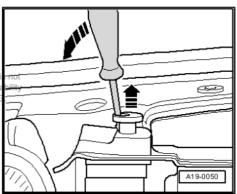
For vehicles with frame -2-, unscrew bolts -1- and remove frame.



Release catches -arrows A- and detach air duct -1- on left and right -arrow B-.



Release retaining pins for radiator on both sides and pull out upwards -arrows-.



#### Condenser with angled connection for refrigerant line:

- Have a second mechanic release retaining clips -1- in direction of -arrow A- and lift condenser -2- out of mountings on radiator -arrows B-.



#### Caution

Risk of damage to condenser, refrigerant lines and refrigerant hoses.

Do NOT stretch kink or bend refrigerant lines and hoses.

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI A

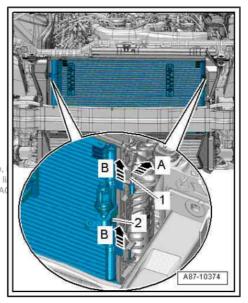
Pivot condenser forwards with pipes/hoses attached.

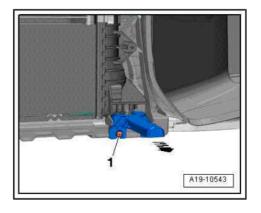
Condenser with straight connection for refrigerant line:

Remove condenser ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Refrigerant circuit; Removing and installing condenser.

#### Continued for all vehicles:

- Detach radiator.
- Remove bolts -1- on both sides and detach radiator bracket with radiator from lock carrier -arrow-.
- Slightly lower radiator.







Press locking tabs on left and right sides of radiator cowl together -arrow- and lift radiator cowl off radiator.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

If there are slight impressions on the fins, refer to ⇒ "3.5 Installing radiators and condensers", page 8.

- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Connect coolant hoses with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector" page 252.



#### Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view radiator/radiator fans", page 251
- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Exploded view - impact bar
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 4.3 Removing and installing radiator cowl

⇒ "4.3.1 Removing and installing radiator cowl - Audi A6",

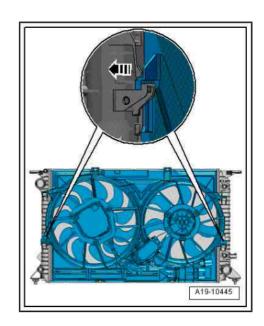
⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing radiator cowl - Audi A7", page 260

#### Removing and installing radiator cowl -4.3.1 Audi A6

Special tools and workshop equipment required

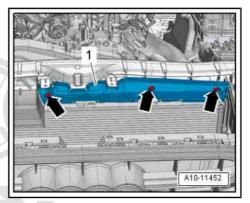
Drip tray for workshop hoist - VAS 6208-





#### Removing

- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attach-
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.



Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.

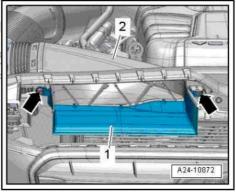


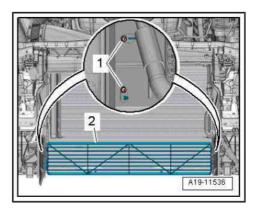
Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does with respect to the correctness of information in this do

#### Disregard -item 2-.

- Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- For vehicles with frame -2-, unscrew bolts -1- and remove frame.





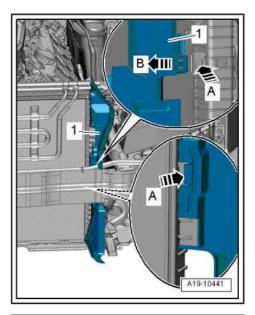
Release catches -arrows A- and swivel air duct -1- on left and right to centre of vehicle -arrow B-.

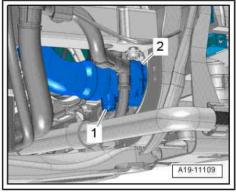


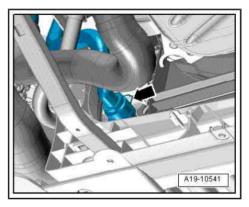
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

- Place drip tray for workshop hoist = VAS 6208 beneath en-
- Remove drain plug -1- and drain off coolant.
- Lift retaining clip -2- and disconnect coolant hose from radia-







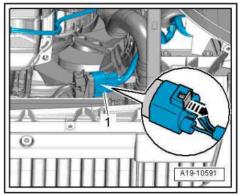




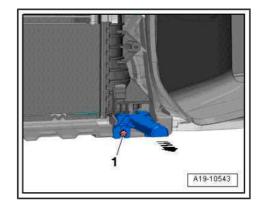
#### WARNING

Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

- ♦ Unplug electrical connectors before starting to work in the area of radiator cowl.
- Take electrical connector -1- for radiator fan out of bracket and unplug connector (push retainer to the rear -arrow- and press down release catch).



- Remove bolts -1- on both sides and detach radiator bracket with radiator from lock carrier -arrow-.
- Press radiator slightly towards front.



Press locking tabs on left and right sides of radiator cowl simultaneously -arrow-, lift radiator cowl off radiator and remove from below.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Connect coolant hose with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector"", page 252.
- Install bumper cover, closure plate and lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Exploded view - bumper cover .



#### Note

Do not reuse coolant.

Fill up with coolant ⇒ page 223.

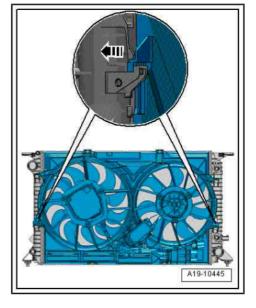
#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view radiator/radiator fans", page 251
- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 4.3.2 Removing and installing radiator cowl -Audi A7

## Removing

Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .





#### WARNING

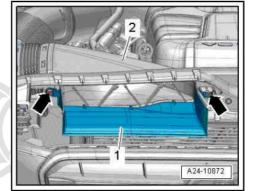
Risk of injury as the radiator fans may start up automatically.

- ♦ Unplug electrical connectors before starting to work in the area of radiator cowl.
- Take electrical connector -1- for radiator fan out of bracket and unplug connector (push retainer to the rear -arrow- and press down release catch).
- Remove closure plate for bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.



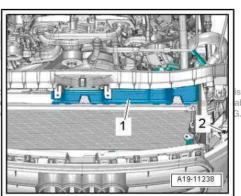
Note

Disregard -item 2-.

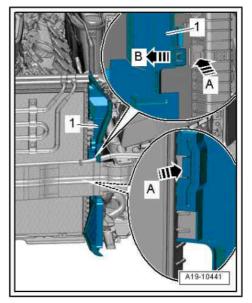


- Detach air duct -1-.
- Remove bolt -2- on both sides and press bumper cover forwards slightly.

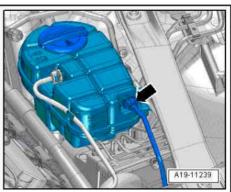




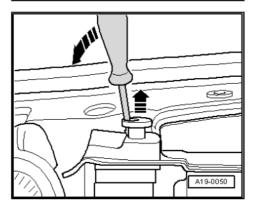
Release catches -arrows A- and swivel air duct -1- on left and right to centre of vehicle -arrow B-.



Lift retaining clip -arrow- and disconnect coolant hoses from coolant expansion tank.



- Release retaining pins for radiator on both sides and pull out upwards -arrows-.
- Press radiator slightly towards front.







Press locking tabs on left and right sides of radiator cowl together -arrow- and lift radiator cowl off radiator.

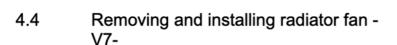
#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

- Connect coolant hose with plug-in connector ⇒ Fig. ""Connecting coolant hose with plug-in connector"", page 252.
- Install bumper cover, closure plate and lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Exploded view - bumper cover .

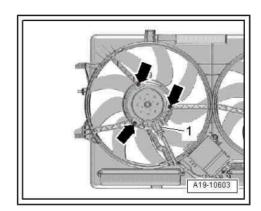
#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view radiator/radiator fans", page 251
- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation



#### Removing

- Remove radiator cowl ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing radiator cowl", page 257.
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach radiator fan V7- (left-side).



- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach radiator fan 2 V177- (rightside).

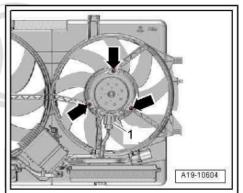
#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Install radiator cowl ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing radiator cowl", page 257.

#### Tightening torques

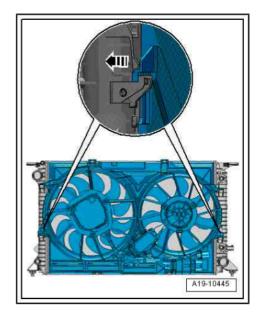
♦ #4.1 Exploded view - radiator/radiator fans", page 251



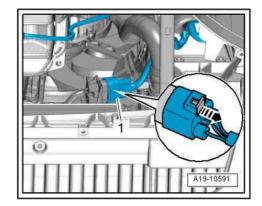
#### Removing and installing radiatorufan does not guarantee or accept any liability 4.5 control unit "it J293" to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### Removing

Remove noise insulation (front) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .



- Take electrical connector -1- for radiator fan out of bracket and unplug connector (push retainer to the rear -arrow- and press down release catch).
- Move clear electrical wiring harness going to radiator fan con-



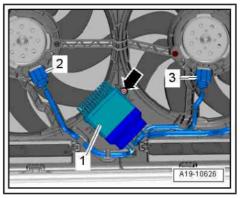
- Unplug electrical connectors -2- and -3-.
- Unscrew bolt -arrow- and remove radiator fan control unit -1-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view radiator/radiator fans", page 251
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation







# Mixture preparation - injection

# Injection system

⇒ "1.1 Overview of fitting locations - injection system", page 265

⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282

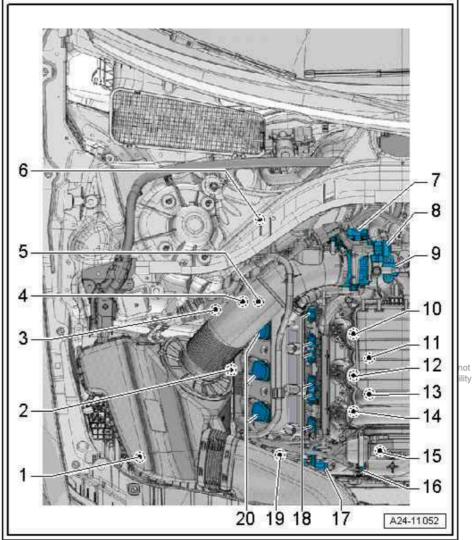
#### 1.1 Overview of fitting locations - injection system

⇒ "1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - injection system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 265

⇒ "1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - injection system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 275

#### 1.1.1 Overview of fitting locations - injection system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine Engine compartment (right-side)

- 1 Secondary air pump motor
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of secondary air pump motor -V101- "" page 274
  - Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view secondary air system", page 352
- 2 Hall sender 3 G300-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271
  - Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view ignition system, vehi-cles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
- 3 Lambda probe G39- with Lambda probe heater - Z19-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (rightside)"", page 273
  - ☐ Fitting location of electrical connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 273
  - Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319





□ Actuator 4 for camshaft adjustment - F369-□ Actuator 5 for camshaft adjustment - F370-□ Actuator 6 for camshaft adjustment - F371-☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271 19 - High-pressure pump ☐ With fuel pressure sender, low pressure - G410- and fuel metering valve - N290-☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations at high-pressure pump"", page 272 ☐ Exploded view ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump", page 312 20 - Ignition coils, cylinder bank 1 ☐ Ignition coil 1 with output stage - N70-Protected by copyright Copyring for private or commercial proposes, in part or in whole, is not performed by copyring the proposes of the prop

□ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371

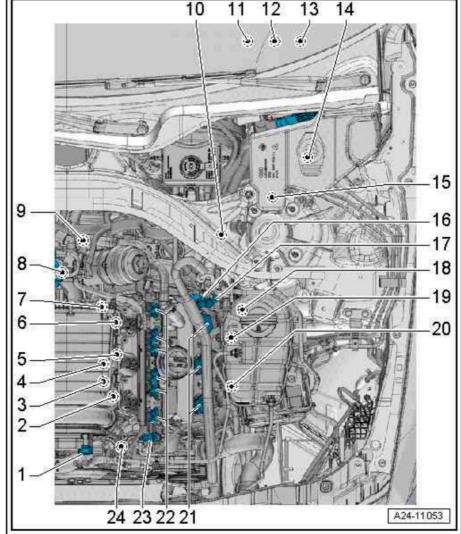
#### Engine compartment (left-side)

☐ Vignition coil 3 with output stage this N291ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- 1 Variable intake manifold position sender - G513-Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at front of engine"", page 272 2 - Injector, cylinder 4 - N33-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2" page 271
  - Exploded view ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view fuel rail with injectors", page 299
- 3 Fuel pressure sender -G247-
  - □ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2" page 271
  - Exploded view "4.1 Exploded view fuel rail with injectors", page 299
- 4 Knock sensor 2 G66-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 271
  - ☐ Fitting location of connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical con-

nectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 274

□ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371



5 - In	ector, cylinder 5 - N83-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 271
	Exploded view ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors", page 299
	ector, cylinder 6 - N84-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2", page 271  Exploded view ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors", page 299
	I pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 271
8 - Er	ngine speed sender - G28-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine speed sender -G28- "", page 273
	Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
9 <b>-</b> O	l pressure switch - F22-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of oil pressure switch -F22A-"", page 272
	Exploded view ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - oil filter housing/oil pressure switches", page 208
10 - L Z30-	ambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- with Lambda probe 2 heater after catalytic converter -
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 274
	Fitting location of electrical connector  ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 274
	Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319
11 - <i>F</i>	Accelerator position sender - G79- / accelerator position sender 2 - G185-
	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of accelerator position sender -G79- / accelerator position sender 2 -G185- "", page 270
	<u> </u>
12 - F	Brake light switch - F-
_	Brake light switch - F- Fitting location
12 - E	Brake light switch - F- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476- "", page 270
	Fitting location
13 - C	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270 Clutch position sender - G476- Only on vehicles with manual gearbox
13 - C	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location
13 - ( 	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270
13 - ( 	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-
13 - ( 	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270
13 - ( 	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269
13 - ( 	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330
13 - ( - - 14 - E - - 15 - (	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476- "", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476- "", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623- "", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-
13 - ( - 14 - E - - 15 - (	Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location   Fig. "Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-", page 269  Removing and installing   *8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-  Fitting location   Fig. "Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-", page 274
13 - ( - 14 - E - - 15 - (	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-", page 274  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
13 - ( - - 14 - E - - 15 - (	Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-", page 269  Removing and installing  8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-", page 274  Exploded view  Frotected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
13 - ( 	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476- Only on vehicles with manual gearbox Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Searbox oil cooling valve - N509- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-"", page 274  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236  Camshaft control valve 2 - N208-  Protected by copyright. Copyrig for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on Cylinder bank 2 (left-side) page 277-ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.
13 - ( 	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269  Removing and installing *8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Fitting location Fig. ""Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-  Fitting location Fig. ""Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-"", page 274  Exploded view *3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236  Camshaft control valve 2 - N208-  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability  Fitting location Fig. ""Fitting locations on "Cylinder bank 2" (left-side) "", page 271  Exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-  Fitting location Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side) "", page 271
13 - ( - - 14 - E - - - 16 - ( - - - 17 - E	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-"", page 274  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236  Camshaft control valve 2 - N208-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on "cylinder bank" 2" (left side) with page 271 ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132  Exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-
13 - ( 14 - E 15 - ( 16 - ( 17 - E	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and c
13 - ( 14 - E 15 - ( 16 - ( 17 - E 18 - L	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Clutch position sender - G476- Only on vehicles with manual gearbox Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Engine control unit - J623- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269  Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330  Gearbox oil cooling valve - N509- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve -N509-"", page 274  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - coolant pipes", page 236  Camshaft control valve 2 - N208-  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on "cylinder bank 2" (reft-side) "", page 271  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132  Exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271  Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132  ambda probe 2 - G108- with Lambda probe heater 2 - Z28-  Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 274
13 - ( 	Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location sender - G476-  Only on vehicles with manual gearbox  Fitting location  Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 280  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 270  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476-"", page 271  Fitting location being the switch -F- and c



- 19 Hall sender 4 G301-
  - ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
  - □ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
- 20 Valve for oil pressure control N428-
  - ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of valve for oil pressure control -N428- "", page 272
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428", page 214
- 21 Ignition coils, cylinder bank 2
  - ☐ Ignition coil 4 with output stage N292-
  - ☐ Ignition coil 5 with output stage N323-
  - ☐ Ignition coil 6 with output stage N324-
  - □ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
- 22 Actuators for camshaft adjustment
  - □ Actuator 7 for camshaft adjustment F372-
  - □ Actuator 8 for camshaft adjustment F373-
  - □ Actuator 9 for camshaft adjustment F374-
  - Actuator 10 for camshaft adjustment F375-
  - Actuator 11 for camshaft adjustment F376-
  - □ Actuator 12 for camshaft adjustment F377-
  - ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
- 23 Hall sender 2 G163-
  - ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
  - □ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
- 24 Coolant valve for cylinder head 10th N489 copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
  - s authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: tat front of engine" lioppage 272 ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Fitting location of secondary air inlet valve - N112-



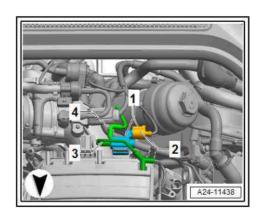
Note

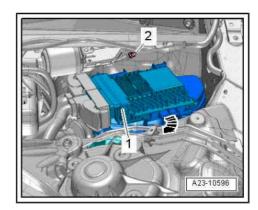
Secondary air inlet valve - N112- is fitted on vehicles from model year 2013 onwards.

- 1 Secondary air inlet valve N112-
- 2 Electrical connector
- 3 Vacuum line to vacuum supply
- 4 Control pipe to combination valves for secondary air inlet

Fitting location of engine control unit - J623-

♦ In left electronics box in engine compartment





Fitting location of fuel pump control unit - J538-

Fuel pump control unit - J538- -arrow- is located between floor panel and fuel tank level with rear seat bench (right-side).



#### Note

For illustration purposes, the floor panel is cut open in the illustration.

Removing and installing ⇒ Fuel supply system; Rep. gr. 20; Fuel pump; Removing and installing fuel pump control unit - J538-

Fitting location of accelerator position sender - G79- / accelerator position sender 2 - G185-

- In accelerator pedal module
- 2 Electrical connector



#### Note

The accelerator position sender - G79- and accelerator position sender 2 - G185- are integrated in the accelerator pedal module and cannot be renewed individually.

Removing and installing ⇒ Fuel supply system, diesel engines; Rep. gr. 20; Accelerator mechanism; Removing and installing accelerator pedal module with accelerator position sender -G79-/ -G185- .

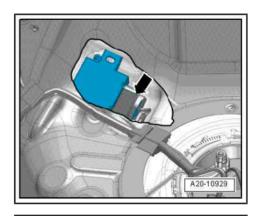


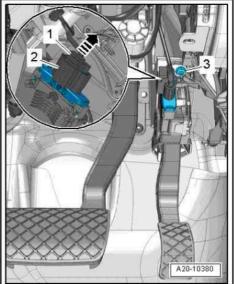
- Brake light switch F-
- Clutch position sender G476- (vehicles with manual gearbox only)

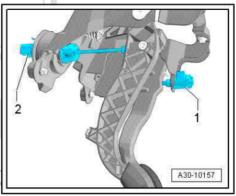
Removing and installing brake light switch - F- ⇒ Brake system; Rep. gr. 45; Sensors; Removing and installing brake light switch

Removing and installing clutch position sender - G476- ⇒ Rep. gr. 30; Clutch mechanism; Removing and installing clutch master cylinder permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guar

with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C







#### Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)

- Hall sender 3 G300-
- 2 -Exhaust camshaft control valve 1 - N318-
- 3 -Camshaft control valve 1 - N205-
- 4 Actuator 6 for camshaft adjustment F371-
- 5 Actuator 5 for camshaft adjustment F370-
- 6 Actuator 4 for camshaft adjustment F369-
- 7 Actuator 3 for camshaft adjustment F368-
- Actuator 2 for camshaft adjustment F367-8 -
- 9 -Actuator 1 for camshaft adjustment - F366-
- 10 Hall sender G40-

### Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)

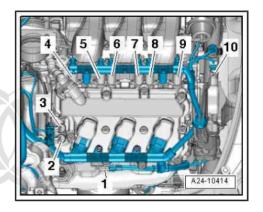
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu Hall sender 2 - G163permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no ess of information in this docu
- 2 Actuator 7 for camshaft adjustment F372-
- 3 Actuator 8 for camshaft adjustment F373-
- 4 Actuator 9 for camshaft adjustment F374-
- 5 Actuator 10 for camshaft adjustment F375-
- 6 Actuator 11 for camshaft adjustment F376-
- 7 Actuator 12 for camshaft adjustment F377-
- 8 Camshaft control valve 2 N208-
- Exhaust camshaft control valve 2 N319-
- 10 Hall sender 4 G301-

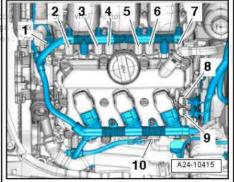
# Fitting locations: components on inside of right cylinder bank 1

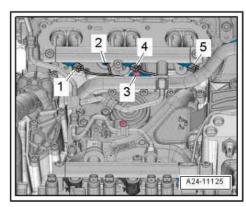
- 1 -Injector, cylinder 1 - N30-
- 2 -Temperature sender for engine temperature regulation -G694-
- Knock sensor 1 G61-3 -
- 4 -Injector, cylinder 2 - N31-
- Injector, cylinder 3 N32-5 -

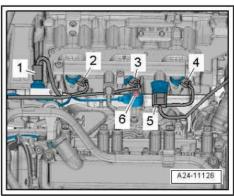
### Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2

- 1 -Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378-
- 2 -Injector, cylinder 6 - N84-
- 3 Injector, cylinder 5 N83-
- 4 Injector, cylinder 4 N33-
- 5 Fuel pressure sender G247-
- Knock sensor 2 G66-



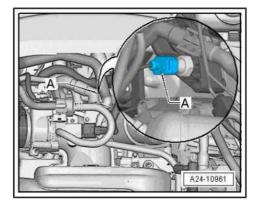




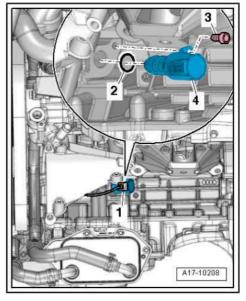


Fitting location of oil pressure switch - F22- -A-

The oil pressure switch - F22- is screwed into the oil filter flange

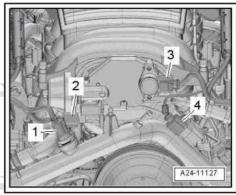


Fitting location of valve for oil pressure control - N428-



Fitting location: at front of engine

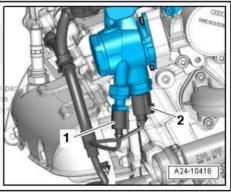
- 1 -Coolant temperature sender - G62-
- 2 -Variable intake manifold change-over valve - N156-
- 3 -Variable intake manifold position sender - G513-
- Coolant valve for cylinder head N489-



Fitting locations at high-pressure pump

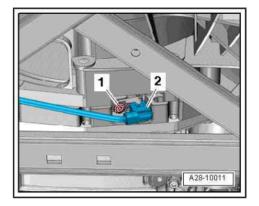
- Fuel pressure sender for low pressure G410-
- Fuel metering valve N290-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarar with respect to the correctness of information in this document. C



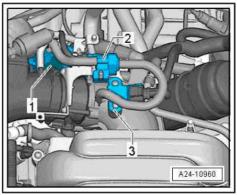
Fitting location of engine speed sender - G28-

♦ Bolted into gearbox from below



Fitting location: at rear of intake manifold

- 1 Throttle valve module J338-
- 2 Activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80-
- Intake air temperature sender G42- / intake manifold pressure sender - G71-



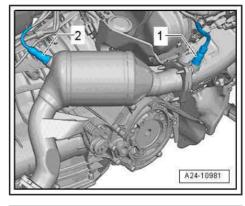
Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)

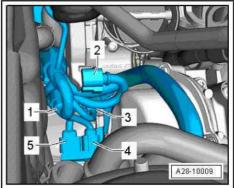
- Lambda probe G39-
- Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-



Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (rightside)

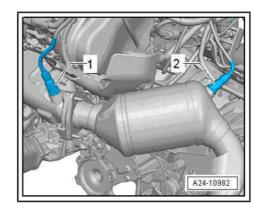
- 1 For knock sensor 1 G61-
- For throttle valve module J338-
- Pr3ected In part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
  - 4/ith resFortLambdanprobe(orrG39+n this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
  - 5 For Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-





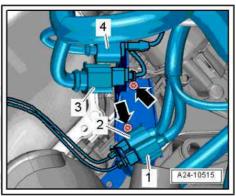
Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)

- Lambda probe 2 G108-
- 2 -Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131-



Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (leftside)

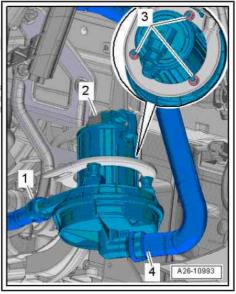
- 1 -For Lambda probe 2 - G131- (after catalytic converter)
- For Lambda probe 2 G108-
- For injectors on cylinder bank 2, fuel pressure sender -G247-, oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378and valve for oil pressure control - N428-
- For knock sensor 2 G66-



Fitting location of secondary air pump motor - V101-

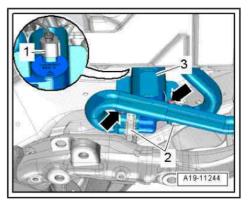
At front right in engine compartment below longitudinal member

> Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gu with respect to the correctness of information in this docum



Fitting location of gearbox oil cooling valve - N509-

At left of subframe

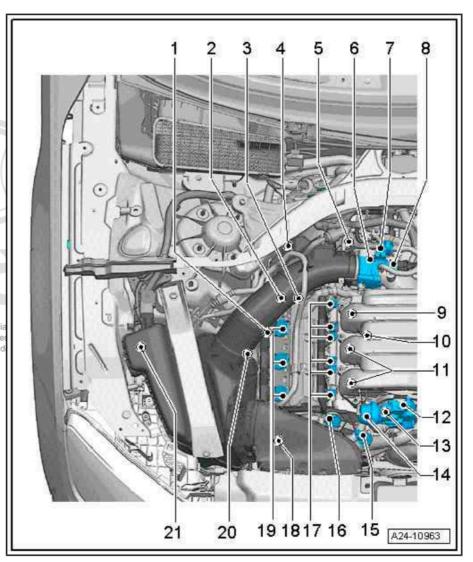




#### 1.1.2 Overview of fitting locations - injection system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine Engine compartment (right-side)

- 1 Lambda probe G39-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (rightside)"", page 273
  - ☐ Fitting location of electrical connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 282
  - Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view -Lambda probes", page 319
- 2 Exhaust camshaft control valve 1 -N318-
- Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1

  Protected by copy (Fight-Side Wint Apage 277) permitted unless (Fight-Side Wint Apage 277) with respect to Exploded view rmation in this
  - ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view cylinder head", page 132
  - 3 Camshaft control valve 1 -N205-
    - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271
    - Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view cylinder head",





# page 132

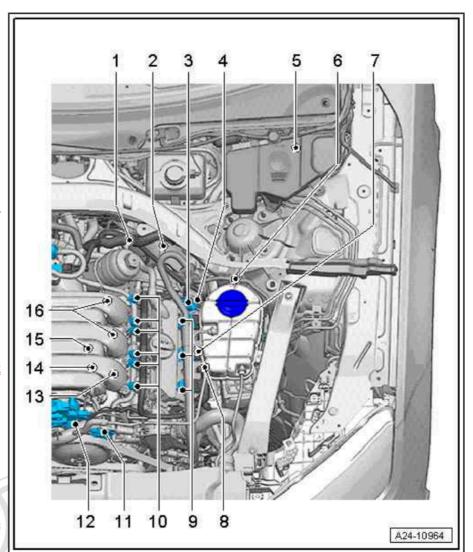
4 - La	ambda probe after catalytic converter - G130-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 273		
	Fitting location of connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 282		
	Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319		
5 - Co	5 - Connectors		
	For injectors, cylinder bank 1		
	For temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694-		
	For throttle valve module - J338-		
	For knock sensor 1 - G61-		
	For Lambda probe - G39-		
	For Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130-		
	Fitting locations of connectors  ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 282		
6 - Th	nrottle valve module - J338-		
	Including throttle valve drive for electric throttle - G186- , throttle valve drive angle sender 1 for electric throttle - G187- and throttle valve drive angle sender 2 for electric throttle - G188-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at rear of intake manifold"", page 273		
7 - Ad	ctivated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 - N80-		
8 - In	take air temperature sender - G42- / intake manifold pressure sender - G71-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at rear of intake manifold"", page 273		
9 - Inj	ector, cylinder 3 - N32-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of right cylinder bank 1"", page 280		
	Exploded view = "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291		
10 - K	Knock sensor 1 - G61-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of right cylinder bank 1"", page 280		
	Fitting location of electrical connectes authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability		
	⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors "on cylinder bankets (fight side)" " page 282 pright by AUDI AG.		
	Exploded view $\Rightarrow$ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373		
11 - I	njectors, cylinder bank 1		
	Injector, cylinder 1 - N30-		
	Injector, cylinder 2 - N31-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of right cylinder bank 1"", page 280		
	Exploded view ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291		
12 - \	/ariable intake manifold position sender - G513-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at front of engine"", page 281		
13 - \	/ariable intake manifold change-over valve - N156-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at front of engine"", page 281		
14 - A	Actuator for intake manifold changeover		
	Vacuum unit		
15 - C	Coolant temperature sender - G62-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at front of engine"", page 281		
16 - F	Hall sender - G40-		
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271		
	Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373		



17 - <i>F</i>	Actuators for camshaft adjustment
	Actuator 1 for camshaft adjustment - F366-
	Actuator 2 for camshaft adjustment - F367-
	Actuator 3 for camshaft adjustment - F368-
	Actuator 4 for camshaft adjustment - F369-
	Actuator 5 for camshaft adjustment - F370-
	Actuator 6 for camshaft adjustment - F371-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271
18 - F	ligh-pressure pump
	With fuel pressure sender, low pressure - G410- and fuel metering valve - N290-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations at high-pressure pump"", page 272
	Exploded view ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump", page 312
19 - I	gnition coils, cylinder bank 1  Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is n
	Ignition coil 1 with output stage - N70- permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liabil
	with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.  Ignition coil 2 with output stage - N127-
	Ignition coil 3 with output stage - N291-
	Exploded view = "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373
20 - F	Hall sender 3 - G300-
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)"", page 271
	Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373
21 - 9	Secondary air pump motor - V101-
21-3 	Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - secondary air system", page 352
_	Exploded view - 30.1 Exploded view - 3econdary all system, page 302

Engine compartment (left-side)

- 1 Bracket (left-side) for connectors
  - ☐ For knock sensor 2 -G66-
  - For injectors, cylinder bank 2
  - For fuel pressure sender - G247-
  - ☐ Fitting locations of connectors
    - ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors", page 281
- 2 Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (leftside)"", page 274
  - Fitting location of electrical connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)", page 274
  - Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view -Lambda probes", page 319
- 3 Camshaft control valve 2 -N208-
  - Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-





	side)"", page 271
	☐ Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132
4 - 1	Exhaust camshaft control valve 2 - N319-
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
	☐ Exploded view ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - cylinder head", page 132
_	Engine control unit - J623-
_	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine control unit -J623-"", page 269
	☐ Removing and installing ⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330
_	Lambda probe 2 - G108- ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 274
	☐ Fitting location ☐ Fig. Fitting location of Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side) , page 274 ☐ Fitting location of electrical connector
	⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors for Lambda probes on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"" , page 274
	■ Exploded view ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319
7 - 1	Hall sender 4 - G301-
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
	☐ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373
8 - '	Valve for oil pressure control - N428-
_	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Fitting location of valve for oil pressure control -N428- "", page 272
	Removing and installing ⇒ "4.6 Removing and installing valve for oil pressure control N428", page 214
_	Ignition coils, cylinder bank 2
	Ignition coil 4 with output stage - N292-
	☐ Ignition coil 5 with output stage - N323-☐ Ignition coil 6 with output stage - N324-
	☐ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373
	- Actuators for camshaft adjustment
	☐ Actuator 7 for camshaft adjustment - F372-
	☐ Actuator 8 for camshaft adjustment - F373-
	☐ Actuator 9 for camshaft adjustment - F374-
	Actuator 10 for camshaft adjustment - F375-
	☐ Actuator 11 for camshaft adjustment - F376-
	Actuator 12 for camshaft adjustment - F377-
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)"", page 271
- 1	- Hall sender 2 - G163-
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations on cylinder bank 2 (left-side)", page 271
	Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373
_	- Variable intake manifold position sender - G513-
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location: at front of engine"", page 281
_	- Injector, cylinder 4 - N33-
_	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 281
	□ Exploded view ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291
Prote	- Fuel pressure sender - G247- cted by copyright, copyring for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
wit	□ led Fitting location A⇒ Fig. A "Fitting locations components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 281 th respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.  Exploded view ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291
	- Knock sensor 2 - G66-
	- Knock sensor 2 - Goo- ☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"" , page 281
	☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "Hung locations, components on inside of left cylinder bank 2 , page 281 ☐ Fitting location of connector ⇒ Fig. ""Electrical connectors"", page 281
	☐ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373

16 -	16 - Injectors, cylinder bank 2				
	Injector, cylinder 5 - N83-				
	Injector, cylinder 6 - N84-				
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2"", page 281				
	Exploded view ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291				
4 - E	Engine speed sender - G28-				
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of engine speed sender -G28- "", page 273				
	Exploded view ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373				
B - F	Fuel pump control unit - J538-				
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of fuel pump control unit -J538- "", page 270				
C - A	Accelerator position sender - G79- / accelerator position sender 2 - G185-				
	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of accelerator position sender -G79- / accelerator position sender 2 -G185- ""  page 270				
D - E	Brake light switch - F-				
	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. "Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476- "", page 270				
E - C	Clutch position sender - G476-				
	Only fitted on vehicles with manual gearbox				
	Fitting location  ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting locations of brake light switch -F- and clutch position sender -G476- "", page 270				
F - C	Dil pressure switch - F22-				
	Fitting location ⇒ Fig. ""Fitting location of oil pressure switch -F22A-"", page 272				
	Exploded view ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - oil filter housing/oil pressure switches", page 208				

☐ Fitting location ⇒ Fig. "" Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure -F378- "", page 281

□ Fitting locations ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

H - Relay and fuse holder in electronics box in plenum chamber (left-side)

Fitting locations: components on inside of right cylinder bank with respect

G - Oil pressure switch for reduced oil pressure - F378-

- Injector, cylinder 1 N30-
- Injector, cylinder 2 N31-
- Injector, cylinder 3 N32-
- Knock sensor 1 G61-

y AUDI AG.

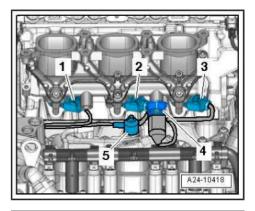
cept any liability

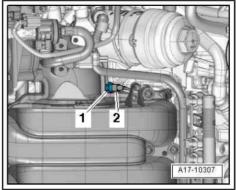


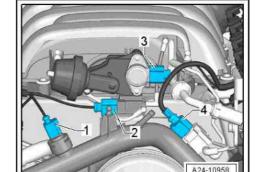
Fitting locations: components on inside of left cylinder bank 2

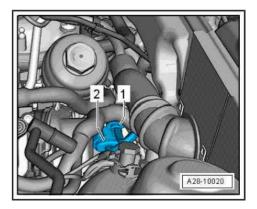
- Injector, cylinder 6 N84-
- 2 -Injector, cylinder 5 - N83-
- 3 -Injector, cylinder 4 - N33-
- Fuel pressure sender G247-4 -
- Knock sensor 2 G66-











#### Fitting location: at front of engine

- Coolant temperature sender G62-
- 2 -Variable intake manifold change-over valve - N156-
- 3 Variable intake manifold position sender G513-
- Coolant valve for cylinder head N489-

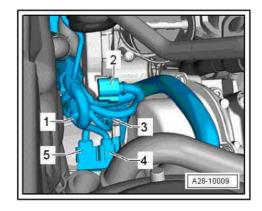
#### Electrical connectors

- 1 Knock sensor 2 G66-
- 2 Injectors, cylinder bank 2, and for fuel pressure sender G247-



Electrical connectors on cylinder bank 1 (right-side)

- 1 Injectors, cylinder bank 1
- 2 Throttle valve module J338- and temperature sender for engine temperature regulation - G694-
- 3 Knock sensor 1 G61-
- 4 Lambda probe G39-
- 5 Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-



#### 1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Vehicle diagnostic tester



#### WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The injection system consists of a high-pressure section (maximum approx. 120 bar) and a low-pressure section (approx. 6 bar).
- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section must be reduced to a residual pressure of approx. 7 bar prior to opening the system. The procedure is described below.

Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section

- Connect a vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Start engine and run at idling speed.
- Select "Engine electronics" in vehicle self-diagnosis.
- Then select "Basic setting".
- Select "Reducing fuel pressure in fuel rail" from the list.
- Then select "Measured values".

Select "Fuel pressure" from the list.

- To activate basic setting, perform Operating instructions func-
- Observe fuel pressure displayed on vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Fuel pressure will drop to a specified value.
- Switch off engine with pedals depressed.









## WARNING

There is a risk of injury: avoid skin contact with fuel.

- Wear safety goggles and protective clothing when opening the fuel system.
- Before opening the high-pressure section of the fuel system, place a clean cloth around the connection to catch escaping fuel.
- The high-pressure system must be opened »immediately« after reducing the fuel pressure; wrap a clean cloth around the connection. Catch the escaping fuel.



# Note

The pressure will increase again due to the effect of residual heat if the high-pressure system is not opened immediately.

## Final steps

Erase event memory and generate readiness code in engine control unit in "Guided Functions" mode.

#### 1.3 Checking fuel system for leaks

- Allow engine to run for several minutes at moderate rpm.
- Switch off ignition.
- Check complete fuel system for leaks.
- If leaks are found although the connections have been tightened to the correct torque, the relevant component must be renewed.
- Road-test vehicle and accelerate with full throttle at least once.
- Then check high-pressure system again for leaks.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

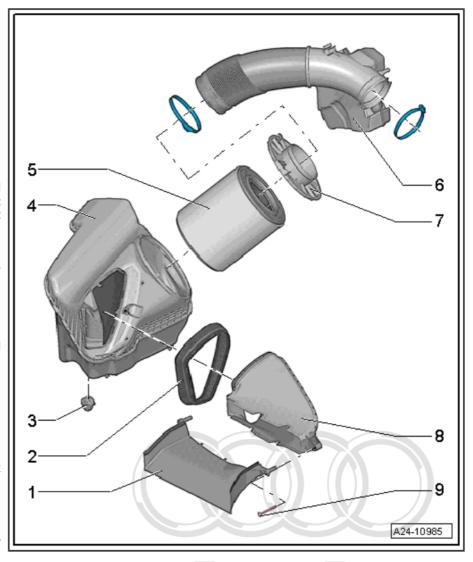
# 2 Air cleaner

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284
- ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285

# 2.1 Exploded view - air cleaner housing

- 1 Air duct
  - Clean out salt deposits, dirt and leaves, etc.
- 2 Sealing element
- 3 Rubber grommet
  - For air cleaner housing
- 4 Air cleaner housing
  - Clean out salt deposits, dirt and leaves, etc.
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285
- 5 Air filter element
  - Use genuine air filter element ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - ☐ Change intervals ⇒ Maintenance tables
  - Removing and installing
     ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- 6 Air pipe
  - ☐ Tightening torque for hose clips

    ⇒ Fig. "'Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285
- 7 Lid
  - For air cleaner housing
  - Remove any salt deposits or dirt
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- 8 Air duct
  - ☐ Clean out salt deposits, dirt and leaves, etc.
- 9 Bolt
  - □ 1.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips



# Note

- Hose connections and air pipes/hoses must be free of oil and grease prior to fitting.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- ♦ The screw sections of used screw-type clips must be sprayed with rust remover prior to fitting so that the air hoses can be attached securely to the hose connections.

# Tightening torque for

- Hose clip with width -a- = 13 mm: 5.5 Nm
- Hose clip with width -b- = 9 mm: 3.4 Nm

## 2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing

## Removing

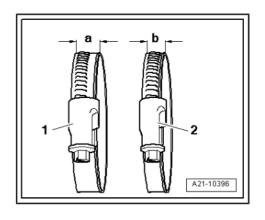
- Remove lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -1-.

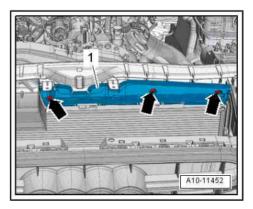


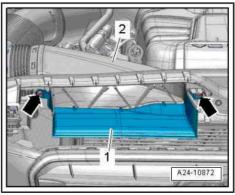
Remove bolts -arrows- and detach air duct -2-.



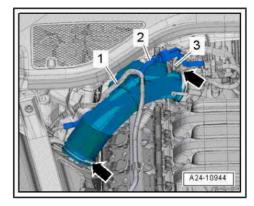
Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.







- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



- Lift off air cleaner housing -1-.
- Press release tabs and disconnect secondary air hose -arrow-.

## Installing



# Note

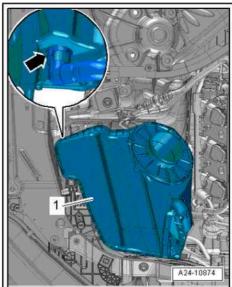
- The air cleaner housing must always be clean.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- When cleaning the air cleaner housing with compressed air, cover the critical components of the engine intake system such as intake pipes etc. with a clean cloth to avoid malfunctions.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install lock carrier cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel". page 64

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "2.1 Exploded view air cleaner housing", page 284
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips page 285





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### 3 Intake manifold

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view intake manifold", page 287
- ⇒ "3.2 Exploded view intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel <u>rail", page 291</u>
- ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292
- ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294
- ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296
- ⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298

#### 3.1 Exploded view - intake manifold

- ⇒ "3.1.1 Exploded view intake manifold, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 287
- ⇒ "3.1.2 Exploded view intake manifold, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 289

#### Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine 3.1.1

- 1 Actuator for intake manifold change-over 2 - Bolt □ 2.5 Nm 3 - Variable intake manifold change-over valve - N156-4 - Bolt □ 8 Nm
- 5 Intake manifold Removing and installing ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold",

page 292

6 - Seal

Renew

7 - Bolt

Protected by co □ 6 Nm permitted unle

8 - Throttle valve module -J338-

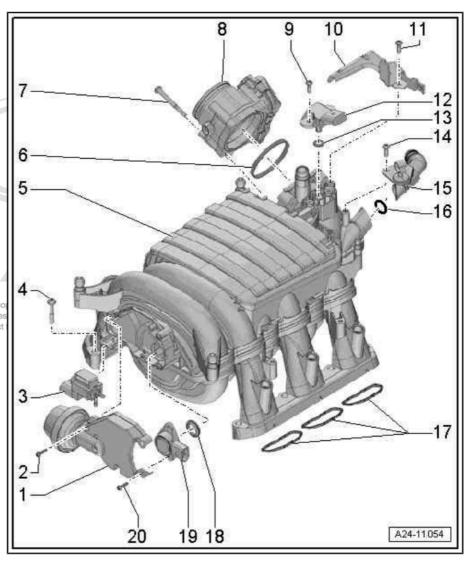
> Removing and installing ⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298

9 - Bolt

□ 3 Nm

10 - Bracket

 On vehicles from model year 2013 onwards, secondary air inlet valve - N112- is secured to



bracket For fitting location refer to ⇒ page 288.

- 11 Bolt
  - □ 6 Nm
- 12 Intake air temperature sender G42- / intake manifold pressure sender G71-
- 13 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 14 Bolt
  - □ 2.5 Nm
- 15 Crankcase breather hose
- 16 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 17 Gaskets
  - □ Renew
- 18 Seal
  - Renew if damaged
  - □ When renewing lever out with screwdriver
  - Press in by hand
- 19 Variable intake manifold position sender G513-
- 20 Bolt
  - □ 2.5 Nm

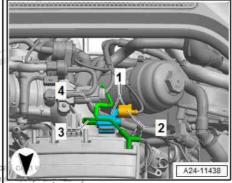
Fitting location of secondary air inlet valve - N112-



Note

Secondary air inlet valve - N112- is fitted on vehicles from model year 2013 onwards.

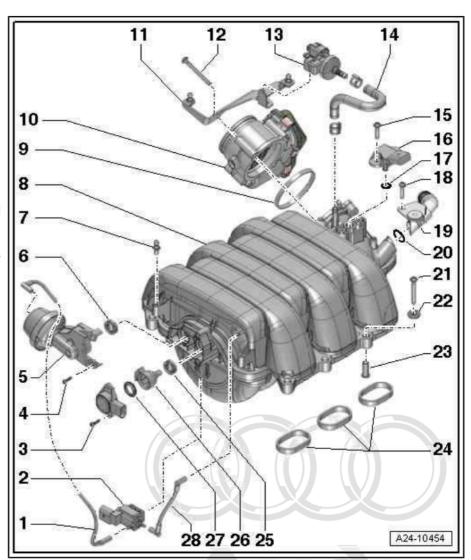
- 1 Secondary air inlet valve N112-
- 2 Electrical connector
- $\textbf{3-Vacuum line to vacuum} \\ \textbf{supply} \\ \textbf{right. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in the private of the private$
- 4 Control pipe to combination valves for secondary air inlet cument. Copy





#### 3.1.2 Exploded view - intake manifold, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine

- 1 Vacuum hose
- 2 Variable intake manifold change-over valve - N156-
- 3 Bolt
  - ☐ For variable intake manifold position sender - G513-
  - □ 2.5 Nm
- 4 Bolt
  - □ 2.5 Nm
- 5 Actuator for intake manifold change-over
  - ☐ Installation position of toothed segments for intake manifold changeover
    - ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of toothed segments for intake manifold change-over"", page 291
  - □ Replacement part is supplied together with -item 26-
- 6 Seal
  - □ Renew if damaged
  - □ When renewing lever



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

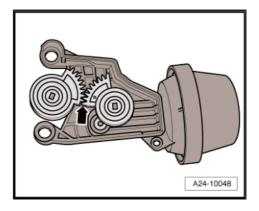
out with screwdriver	
☐ Press in by hand	
7 - Ball stud □ 2.5 Nm	
8 - Intake manifold (top sec- tion)	
□ Removing and installing ⇒ "3.4 Removing and ins	talling intake manifold (top section)", page 294
9 - Seal	
☐ Renew	
10 - Throttle valve module - J338-	
□ Removing and installing ⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing	talling throttle valve module J338 ", page 298
11 - Bracket	
12 - Bolt	
□ 6 Nm	
13 - Activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 - N80-	
14 - Hose	
15 - Bolt □ 3 Nm	
16 - Intake air temperature sender - G42- / intake manifo	old pressure sender - G71-
·	nu pressure seriuer - G7 1-
17 - O-ring ☐ Renew	AUUI
18 - Bolt	Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is
□ 2.5 Nm	permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liab with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
19 - Crankcase breather hose	
20 - O-ring	
☐ Renew	
21 - Bolt	
□ 8 Nm	
22 - Washer	
23 - Distance sleeve	
24 - Gaskets	
☐ Renew	
25 - Seal	
<ul><li>□ Renew if damaged</li><li>□ When renewing lever out with screwdriver</li></ul>	
☐ Press in by hand	
26 - Lever with toothed segment	
27 - Seal	
☐ Renew if damaged	
☐ When renewing lever out with screwdriver	
☐ Press in by hand	

28 - Vacuum hose



Installation position of toothed segments for intake manifold change-over

The lower edges of the toothed segments must be flush -arrow-.



#### 3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail

- 1 Intake manifold (bottom section)
  - Removing and installing (left and right) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296
- 2 Distance sleeve
- 3 Fuel pressure sender -G247-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "5.1.2 Řemoving and installing fuel pressure sender G247 - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine" page 311 permitted un

with respo

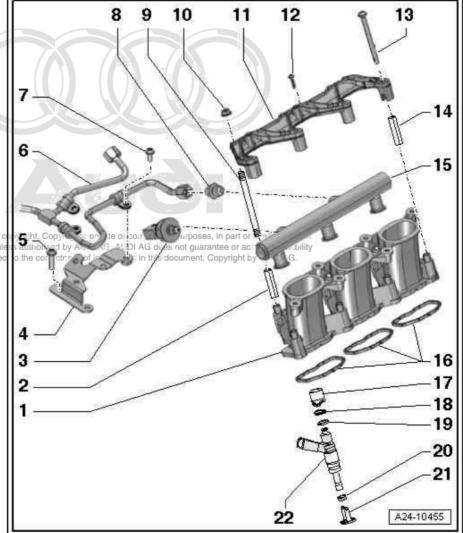
- □ 20 Nm
- 4 Bracket
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 High-pressure pipe



## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This cause injury.

The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system.



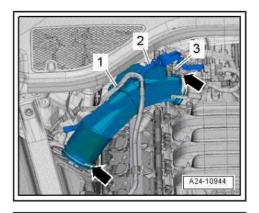
- Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282
- Do not alter shape
- ☐ Do NOT bend open retainer for fuel pipe
- ☐ If retainer has been bent open or fuel pipe has to be renewed, retainer must also be renewed
- □ 25 Nm

7 - Bolt 9 Nm
8 - Threaded connection  40 Nm
□ Renew
9 - Stud
10 - Nut
□ 9 Nm
11 - Retainer for fuel rail
12 - Bolt
□ 2.5 Nm
13 - Bolt Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
14 - Distance sleeve
15 - Fuel rail
16 - Gaskets
☐ Renew
17 - Support ring  Make sure it is correctly seated
☐ Via this support ring, the fuel rail exerts the force which holds the injector in the cylinder head.
18 - O-ring
□ Renew
☐ Lubricate lightly with clean engine oil
19 - Spacer ring
□ Renew if damaged
20 - Combustion chamber ring seal
□ Renewing ⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 305
21 - Radial compensation element  Renew if damaged
☐ Clip onto support ring -item 17-
22 - Injector
Removing and installing ⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 305
3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold
i Note
The description applies for vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine.
Removing
Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.



- Remove engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", <u>page 64</u> .
- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



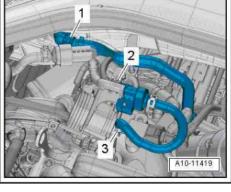
- Unplug electrical connector -2- at activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 - N80- and detach vacuum hose -3-.
- Detach activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80- from bracket and move it clear to the side with hoses still attached.

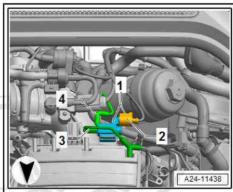


Note

Disregard -item 1-.

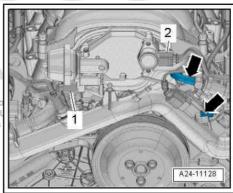
- If fitted, unplug electrical connector -2- and disconnect vacuum hoses -3- and -4-.
- Disengage secondary air inlet valve N112- from bracket.



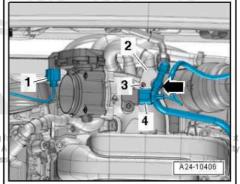


- Unplug electrical connectors at front of intake manifold.
- Variable intake manifold change-over valve N156-
- Variable intake manifold position sender G513-
- Move clear vacuum hoses -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by A with respect to the correctness



- Move clear vacuum hose -arrow-.
- Move electrical wiring harness clear.
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Press retaining tab -2- up slightly and detach crankcase breather hose from intake manifold.



Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctn

Remove bolts -arrows- and detach intake manifold.



# Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to engine.

◆ Block off the openings in the cylinder heads with clean cloths to prevent small items from dropping through the intake ports into the engine.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Renew gaskets and O-rings.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

## Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1.1 Exploded view intake manifold, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 287
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285

## 3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)



## Note

The description applies for vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine.

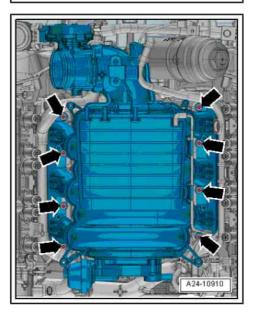
# Removing



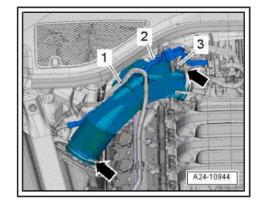
Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

Remove engine cover panels ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.



- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.

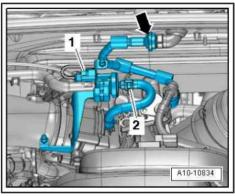


Detach vacuum hose -2-.



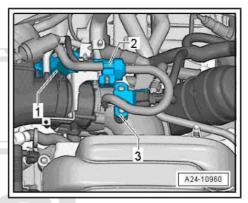
Note

Ignore -arrow-.

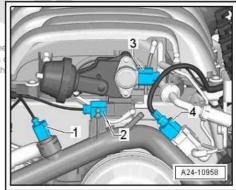


Unplug following electrical connectors:

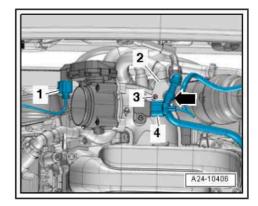
- 1 Throttle valve module J338-
- 2 Activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80-
- 3 Intake air temperature sender G42-/intake manifold pressure sender - G71-
- Take activated charcoal filter solenoid valve 1 N80- out of bracket and move to side with hose attached.



- Unplug electrical connectors at front of intake manifold.
- 2 Variable intake manifold change-over valve N156-
- 3 Variable intake manifold position Protected by copyright Copyring for private or community of the second position and position of the second position and pos with respect to the correctness of information in



- Move vacuum hose clear -arrow-.
- Move electrical wiring harness clear.
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Press retaining tab -2- up slightly and detach crankcase breather hose from intake manifold.



Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove intake manifold (top section).



# Note

Seal intake ports on cylinder heads with clean cloths.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Renew gaskets and O-rings.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

# A15-10000

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1.2 Exploded view intake manifold, vehicles with 2.5 "Into pyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not a permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285

## 3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)



# Note

- The description applies for vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine.
- The intake manifold (bottom section) and fuel rail are removed and installed together.

# Removing



## Note

The following description shows the removal and installation of the bottom section of the intake manifold (left-side). The procedure for the other side is more or less identical.



## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- ◆ The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282
- Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.



- Unplug electrical connector at fuel pressure sender G247--item 2-.
- Remove union nut -1-.
- Unscrew bolts and nuts -arrows- and detach intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail.



# Note

Seal intake ports on cylinder heads with clean cloths.

## Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

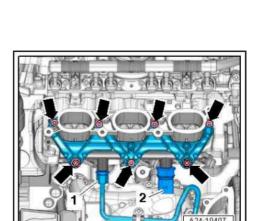


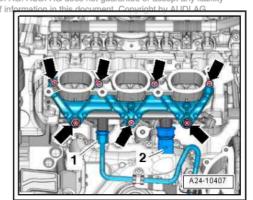
# Note

- If an injector has been pulled out of the cylinder head, the teflon ring seal must be renewed.
- Renew gaskets and O-rings.
- Lubricate O-rings of injectors lightly with clean engine oil.
- Press intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail evenly onto injectors.
- Tighten bolts and nuts -arrows- for intake manifold (bottom section) in diagonal sequence and in stages.
- Plug in electrical connector -2- at fuel pressure sender -G247- .
- Fit high-pressure pipe on fuel rail ⇒ Fig. "Installing high-pressure pipe on fuel rail", page 318.

# Tightening torques

⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291

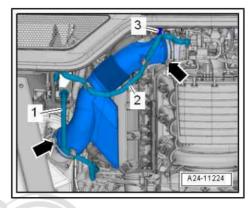




## 3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module - J338-

# Removing

- Remove engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Release hose clips -arrows- and remove air pipe.



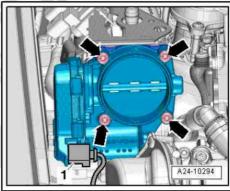
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach throttle valve module -J338- with intermediate flange.



# Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to engine.

Block off the openings in the cylinder heads with clean cloths to prevent small items from dropping through the intake ports into the engine.



# Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64

## Tightening torques

⇒ "3.1 Exploded view - intake manifold", page 287



#### 4 Injectors

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view fuel rail with injectors", page 299
- ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail", page 300
- ⇒ "4.3 Removing and installing injectors", page 301

#### 4.1 Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors



Note

This exploded view applies for vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine.

## 1 - Fuel pressure sender -G247-

Removing and installing ⇒ "5.1.1 Removing and 

in the state of installing fuel pressure sender G247 - vehicles

Protected by cowith 2:5/http://engine//commen permitted unlespanies 1 by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do with respect to the correctness of information in this

- □ 20 Nm
- 2 Bracket
- 3 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 4 High-pressure pipe

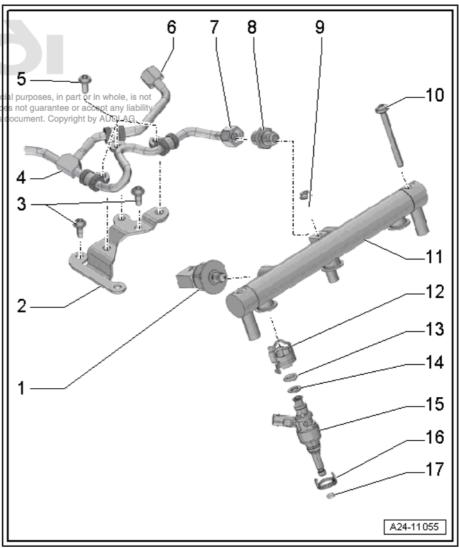


# WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system.

- □ Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure system "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282
- Do not alter shape
- ☐ Do NOT bend open retainer for fuel pipe
- ☐ If retainer has been bent open or fuel pipe has to be renewed, retainer must also be renewed
- ☐ Tightening ⇒ Fig. ""Installing high-pressure pipe on fuel rail"", page 318
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Union nut
  - □ Lubricate threads lightly with clean engine oil
  - 25 Nm



1	K	K	K	
L	¥	丒	¥	)
П				

7	- Uı	nion	nu
		1	hrio

Lubricate threads lightly with clean engine oil

□ 25 Nm

8 - Threaded connection

□ 40 Nm

Renew after removing

9 - Nut

□ 9 Nm

10 - Bolt

□ 9 Nm

11 - Fuel rail

12 - Support ring

Make sure it is correctly seated

Via this support ring, the fuel rail exerts the force which holds the injector in the cylinder head.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

13 - O-ring

□ Renew

Lubricate lightly with clean engine oil

14 - Spacer ring

Renew if damaged

15 - Injector

Removing and installing = "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 305

16 - Sealing washer

17 - Combustion chamber ring seal

□ Renewing ⇒ "4.3.1 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 301

#### 4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail



Note

- The description applies for vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine.
- The following instructions describe the removal and installation procedures for the fuel rail on the left side. The procedure for the right side is similar.

## Removing



## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system

⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282 .

Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.



- Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.
- Unplug electrical connector at fuel pressure sender G247--item 5-.
- Remove union nut -2-.
- Remove bolts -1, 4 and 6- and nut -3- and detach fuel rail.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- If an injector has been pulled out of the cylinder head, the teflon ring seal must be renewed.
- Renew gaskets and O-rings.
- Lubricate O-rings of injectors lightly with clean engine oil.
- Press fuel rail evenly onto injectors.
- Fit high-pressure pipe on fuel rail ⇒ Fig. ""Installing high-pressure pipe on fuel rail"", page 318
- Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

# Tightening torques

♦ ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view - fuel rail with injectors", page 299

#### 4.3 Removing and installing injectors

- ⇒ "4.3.1 Removing and installing injectors vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 301
- ⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 305

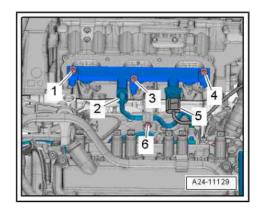
## 4.3.1 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine

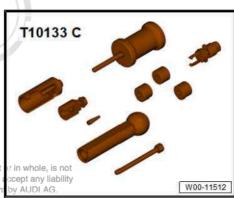
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Tool set for FSI engines - T10133 C-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh





# Removing

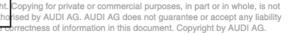


# WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282.

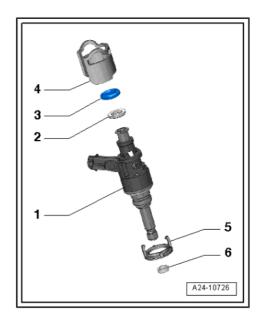
Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate. permitted unless author



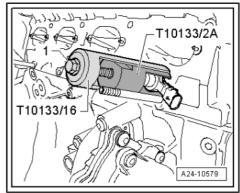
- Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.
- Remove fuel rail ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail", page 300.

If injectors cannot be pulled out of cylinder head by hand, proceed as follows:

Pull support ring -4- off injector -1-.



- Guide puller -T10133/2A- into groove on injector.
- Then attach removal tool -T10133/16- and pull out injector by turning bolt -1-.



Carefully remove old combustion chamber ring seal -arrow-. To do so, cut open combustion chamber ring seal using knife or prise open with small screwdriver and then pull off forwards.



## Note

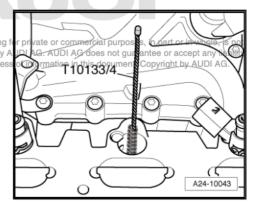
Take care not to damage groove on injector. Injector must be renewed if groove is damaged.

# Installing

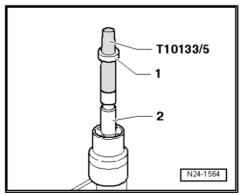


# Note

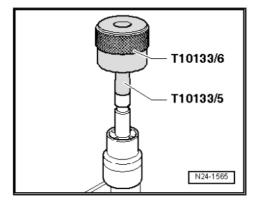
- Renew combustion chamber ring seals and O-rings.
- Renew spacer ring and radial compensation element if damaged.
- Lightly lubricate O-rings for injectors with clean engine oil.
- The injector pipes must be re-installed on the same cylinders.
- Clean bore in cylinder head with nylon cylinder brush -T10133/4- .
- Protected by copyright. Copying When re-installing an injector, clean any combustion residuesed by off groove for combustion chamber ring seal and injector stem ectno with a clean cloth.

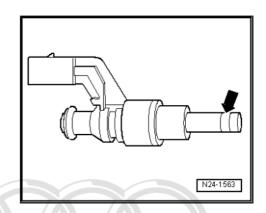


Fit assembly cone -T10133/5- with new combustion chamber ring seal -1- from repair kit onto injector -2-.



- Using assembly sleeve -T10133/6-, push combustion chamber ring seal onto assembly cone -T10133/5- as far as it will
- Turn round assembly sleeve -T10133/6- and slide combustion chamber ring seal into groove.





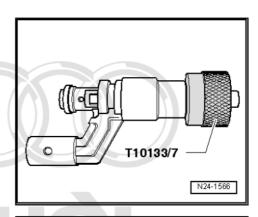


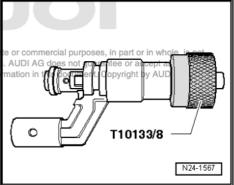
## Note

The combustion chamber ring seal is widened when it is pushed onto the injector. After pushing it on, it therefore has to be compressed again. This is done in two stages, as described below.

- Push calibration sleeve -T10133/7- onto injector as far as it will go and simultaneously turn it slightly (approx. 180°).
- Pull calibration sleeve -T10133/7- off again by turning it in the opposite direction.
- Push calibration sleeve -T10133/8- onto injector as far as it will go and simultaneously turn it slightly (approx. 180°).
- Pull calibration sleeve -T10133/8- off again by turning it in the opposite direction. permitted unless authorised by AUDI A

with respect to the correctness of info





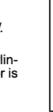
- Fit parts from repair kit onto injector -1-:
- 2 Spacer ring
- 3 O-ring
- 4 Support ring
- 5 Sealing washer
- To make it easier to install injector in fuel rail, lubricate new Oring lightly with clean engine oil before installing it.



# Note

The combustion chamber ring seal -6- must not be lubricated.

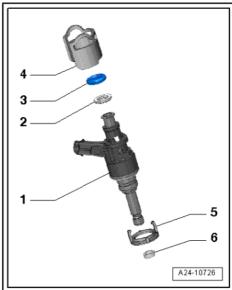
Push injector by hand as far as it will go into aperture in cylinder head (do not use oil or grease). Ensure that the injector is properly seated in the cylinder head.

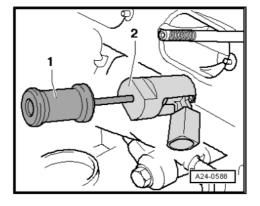




## Note

- It should be possible to insert injector easily. If necessary wait until the combustion chamber ring seal has contracted sufficiently.
- Note correct installation position and ensure that injectors are properly seated in cylinder head.
- If the injector cannot be pushed in by hand, use puller -T10133/2A- -2- with striker - T10133/3- to insert the injector.





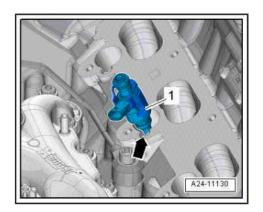


Installation position of support ring:

Lug -1- on support ring must engage in recess -arrow- in cylinder head.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install fuel rail ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing fuel rail", page 300.
- Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.



## 4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Tool set for FSI engines - T10133 C-





Note

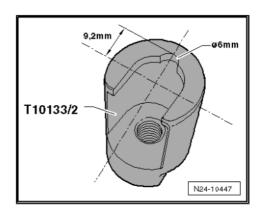
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Special tool T10133/2 (puller) has been modified and now has the I AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

designation puller T10133/2 A . If you have not yet received the finformation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. new tool you can make the modification yourself.

Modifying special tool T10133/2 (puller) to make it equivalent to puller T10133/2 A

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Round file, approx. 6 mm
- File out a semi-circular recess as shown in the illustration. The recess allows the tool to be pushed further onto the injector so the contact surface is increased.
- For identification purposes, mark the modified tool with the letter "A" after the tool number.



## Injector - exploded view

- Injector
- 2 -Spacer ring (renew if damaged)
- O-ring (renew; apply thin coating of clean engine oil prior to installation)
- Support ring (via the support ring the fuel rail exerts force which secures injector in cylinder head)
- Radial compensation element (renew if damaged) 5 -
- Combustion chamber ring seal (teflon ring seal) renew; when fitting, do not grease ring or use any other lubricant.

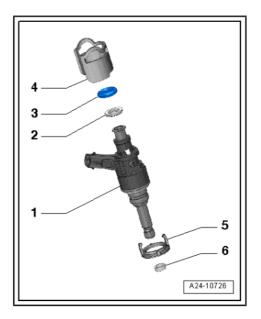
# Removing



# WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", <u>page 282</u> .
- Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.





# Note

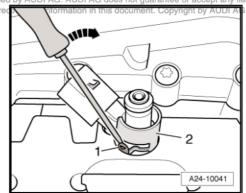
Injectors must only be installed when engine is cold.

- Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.
- Remove intake manifold (bottom section) on relevant side ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296

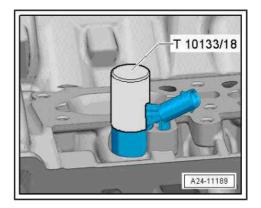
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability permitted unless authorise

If injectors cannot be pulled out of cylinder head by hand, proceed ocorre

Use a screwdriver to bend retainer tabs -1- of radial compensation element to side -arrow- and pull support ring -2- off injector.



Slide stop sleeve -T10133/18- over injector.

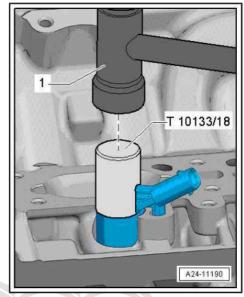


Carefully knock against stop sleeve several times to loosen injector.



# Note

- Use a torque wrench to pull out injector.
- Adjust torque wrench to 5 Nm.

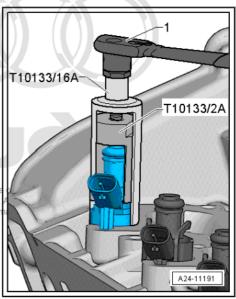


- Guide puller -T10133/2A- into groove on injector.
- Then apply puller T10133/16A.
- Pull out injector by turning bolt with torque wrench -1-.
- If injector does not come loose after limit torque of 5 Nm is reached, remove puller and repeat procedure using stop sleeve to loosen injector.



# Note

- Observe correct torque to avoid irreparable damage to injec-Protected by copyright. Copying for private permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
- The combustion chamber ring seal must always be renewed of information to make the combustion chamber ring seal must always be renewed prior to reinstalling the injector.



Carefully remove old combustion chamber ring seal -arrow-. To do so, cut open combustion chamber ring seal using knife or prise open with small screwdriver and then pull off forwards.



## Note

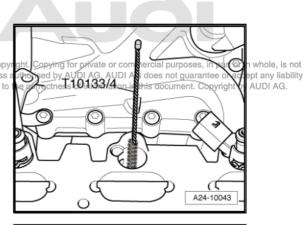
Take care not to damage groove on injector. Injector must be renewed if groove is damaged.

# Installing

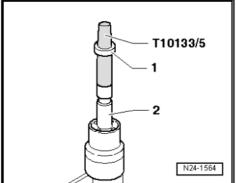


# Note

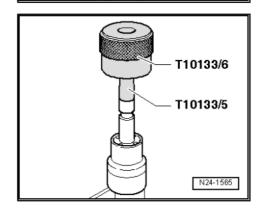
- Renew combustion chamber ring seals and O-rings.
- Renew spacer ring and radial compensation element if damaged.
- Lightly lubricate O-rings for injectors with clean engine oil.
- The injector pipes must be re-installed on the same cylinders.
- Clean bore in cylinder head with nylon cylinder brush -T10133/4-.
- When re-installing an injector, clean any combustion residue by cop off groove for combustion chamber ring seal and injector stem combustion chamber ring seal and chamber ring seal and combustion chamber ring seal and combustion chamber ring seal and with a clean cloth.

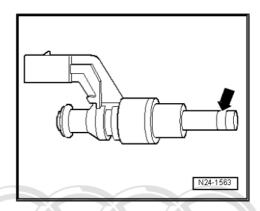


Fit assembly cone -T10133/5- with new combustion chamber ring seal -1- from repair kit onto injector -2-.



- Using assembly sleeve -T10133/6-, push combustion chamber ring seal onto assembly cone -T10133/5- as far as it will
- Turn round assembly sleeve -T10133/6- and slide combustion chamber ring seal into groove.





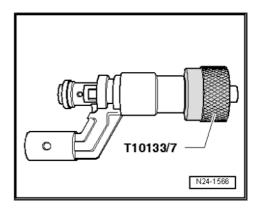


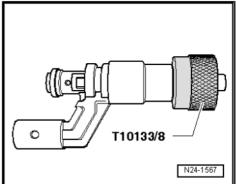


# Note

The combustion chamber ring seal is widened when it is pushed onto the injector. After pushing it on, it therefore has to be compressed again. This is done in two stages, as described below.

- Push calibration sleeve -T10133/7- onto injector as far as it will go and simultaneously turn it slightly (approx. 180°).
- Pull calibration sleeve -T10133/7- off again by turning it in the opposite direction.
- Push calibration sleeve -T10133/8- onto injector as far as it will go and simultaneously turn it slightly (approx. 180°).
- Pull calibration sleeve -T10133/8- off again by turning it in the opposite direction.





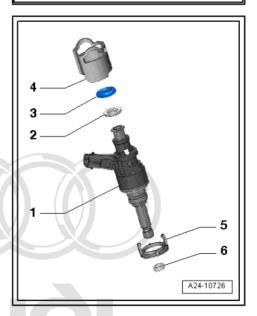
- Fit parts from repair kit onto injector -1-:
- 2 Spacer ring
- 3 O-ring
- 4 Support ring
- 5 Sealing washer
- To make it easier to install injector in fuel rail, lubricate new Oring lightly with clean engine oil before installing it.



# Note

The combustion chamber ring seal -6- must not be lubricated.

Push injector by hand as far as it will go into aperture in cylinder head (do not use oil or grease). Ensure that the injector is properly seated in the cylinder head.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# Note

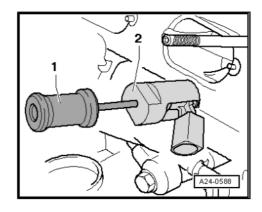
- It should be possible to insert injector easily. If necessary wait until the combustion chamber ring seal has contracted sufficiently.
- ♦ Note correct installation position and ensure that injectors are properly seated in cylinder head.
- If the injector cannot be pushed in by hand, use puller -T10133/2A- -2- with striker - T10133/3- to insert the injector.
- Electrical connector of injector must engage in recess in cylinder head.

Remaining installation steps are carried out in reverse sequence; note the following:

- Install intake manifold (bottom section) ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Install: intake manifold (top section) rotal purposes, in part or in whole, is not #3:4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)

  #y

  | The continue of the c page 294t to the



#### 5 Senders and sensors

⇒ "5.1 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247", page

- 5.1 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender - G247-
- ⇒ "5.1.1 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247 vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 311
- ⇒ "5.1.2 Removing and installing fuel pressure sender G247 vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 311
- Removing and installing fuel pressure 5.1.1 sender - G247- - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine

## Removing

- Remove intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.
- Unplug electrical connector -arrow-.
- Unscrew fuel pressure sender G247- .

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

# Tightening torques

- ◆ ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view fuel rail with injectors", page 299
- Removing and installing fuel pressure 5.1.2 sender - G247- - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine

# Removing

- Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294 .
- Unplug electrical connector at fuel pressure sender G247-
- Unscrew fuel pressure sender G247- -4-.

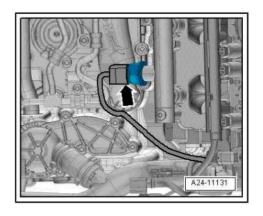
# Installing

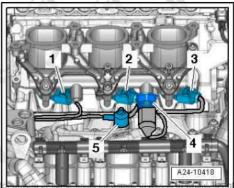
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

Install intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", <u>page 294</u> .

# Tightening torques

⇒ "3.2 Exploded view - intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail", page 291





Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by A with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

#### 6 High-pressure pump

- ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view high-pressure pump", page 312
- ⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump", page 314
- ⇒ "6.3 Removing and installing high-pressure pipe", page 317

#### 6.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump

- 1 Fuel pressure sender for low pressure - G410-
  - □ 15 Nm
- 2 Not fitted
- 3 Bolt
  - Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ Fig. ""High-pressure pump - tightening torque and sequence"", page 313
- 4 High-pressure pump
  - With fuel metering valve - N290-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "6.2 Removing and installing high-pressure pump", page 314
  - Do not dismantle
- 5 Threaded connection
  - Connections must not be damaged
  - □ 27 Nm
- 6 Fuel supply hose
  - Low-pressure section
- 7 High-pressure pipe

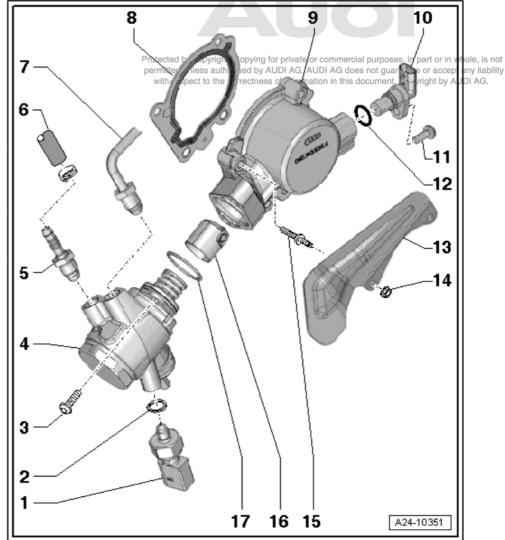


## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This cause injury.

The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system

*⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel* pressure in high-pres sure section", page 282 .



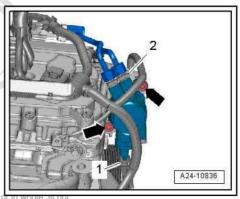
- □ Removing and installing ⇒ "6.3 Removing and installing high-pressure pipe", page 317
- Do not alter shape
- □ Check for damage before re-installing
- Lubricate thread of union nut with clean engine oil
- □ 25 Nm

- 8 Gasket
  - □ Renew
- 9 Housing
- 10 Hall sender G40-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380
- 11 Bolt
  - ☐ Tightening torque ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view ignition system", page 371
- 12 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 13 Protective plate
  - For high-pressure pipe
  - □ Different versions available ⇒ Fig. ""Guard plate for high-pressure pipe - tightening torque"", page 313; for allocation refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- 14 Nut
  - □ 9 Nm
- 15 Threaded pin
  - □ 9 Nm
- 16 Roller tappet
  - Can only be installed in one position
  - ☐ Lubricate lightly with clean engine oil before installing
- 17 O-ring
  - Renew
  - □ Lubricate lightly with clean engine oil before installing

High-pressure pump - tightening torque and sequence

Tighten bolts in stages as follows:

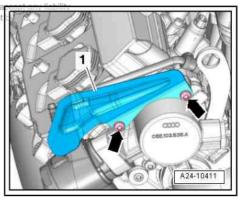
Stage	Bolts	Tightening torque
1.	-arrows-	Screw in by hand until contact is made
2.	-arrows-	5 Nm
3.	-arrows-	Tighten in stages and alternately; final torque 20 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part

Guard plate for high-pressure pipe or rightening for our document. Copyright

- Tighten bolts -arrows- securing guard plate -1-.
- Tightening torque: 9 Nm

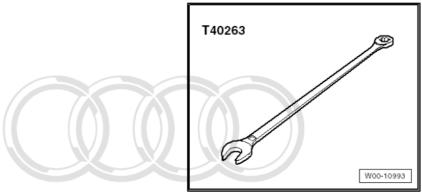




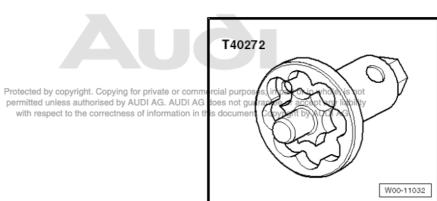
# 6.2 Removing and installing high-pressure

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Wrench, 21 mm - T40263-



Turning-over tool - T40272-



## Removing



## WARNING

The fuel system operates at extremely high pressure. This can cause injury.

- The fuel pressure in the high-pressure section of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282 .
- Wrap a clean cloth around the connection and carefully loosen the connection to allow the residual pressure to dissipate.



# Note

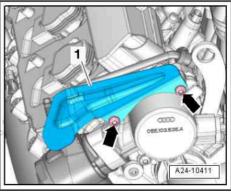
- The high-pressure pump should only be removed and installed when the engine is cold.
- When installing the high-pressure fuel pump, it is essential to ensure that no dirt enters the fuel system.
- Use a cloth to catch escaping fuel.
- The O-ring must always be renewed.



- Reduce fuel pressure in high-pressure system ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page
- Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing",
- Unscrew nuts -arrows- and remove guard plate -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any I with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



- Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -6-.
- Remove bolt -3- on retaining clip.
- Unscrew connections -2- and -5-.
- Remove bolts -arrows-.
- Carefully pull out high-pressure pump. It is possible that the roller tappet may remain lodged inside.



## Note

- Disregard -item 4-.
- Do not bend fuel pipes to a different shape.
- Do NOT bend open retaining clamps for fuel pipe.
- If one of the retaining clamps has been bent open or the fuel pipe has to be renewed, the retaining clamps must also be renewed.
- Pull roller tappet -1- out of housing.

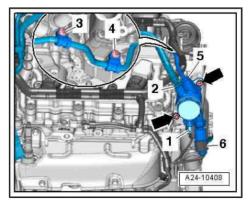
# Installing

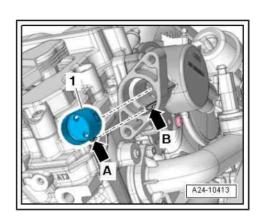
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



## Note

- The connections of the high-pressure pipe must not be damaged.
- Do not bend fuel pipes to a different shape.
- Do NOT bend open retaining clamps for fuel pipe.
- If one of the retaining clamps has been bent open or the fuel pipe has to be renewed, the retaining clamps must also be renewed.
- Renew O-ring for high-pressure pump.





- Check roller tappet -1- for damage and renew if necessary.
- Lightly lubricate roller tappet with oil and insert it so that lug -arrow A- slides into guide notch -arrow B-.



## Note

The roller tappet must be positioned at the lowest point when installing the high-pressure pump.

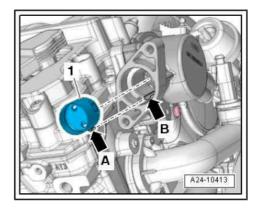
- Fit turning-over tool T40272- onto wrench (21 mm) -T40263- .
- Position adapter on bolts of vibration damper.
- Hole -arrow A- on turning-over tool T40272- must be positioned between markings -arrows B- on vibration damper.
- Rotate crankshaft in direction of normal engine rotation -arrow- using wrench (21 mm) - T40263- and turning-over tool T40272-, and at the same time press roller tappet into housing until it reaches lowest point.
- Only lift high-pressure pipe slightly to fit high-pressure pump.
- Insert high-pressure pump into housing.
- Press high-pressure pump down by hand as far as possible onto stop.
- Hand-tighten the bolts -arrows- as far as the flange.
- Then initially tighten securing bolts alternately to 5 Nm (do not rivate tilt high-pressure pump). with respect to the correctness of information

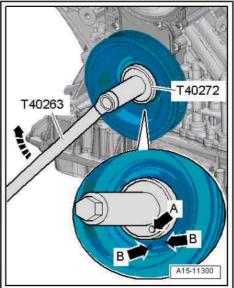


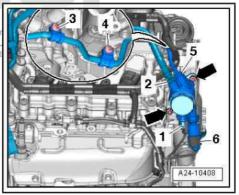
# Note

The high-pressure pump can be damaged if it is tightened too much on one side (keep it straight).

- Final tightening torque for securing bolts ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view - high-pressure pump", page 312
- Tighten union nut -5- on fuel supply line hand-tight. Align so that parts are free of tension.
- Connect fuel supply hose -2- again.









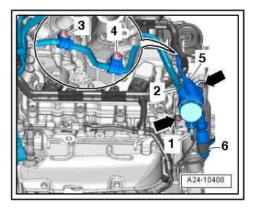
- Tighten bolt -3- on retaining clip.
- Plug in electrical connectors -1- and -6-.

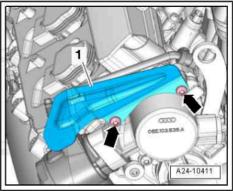


Note

Disregard -item 4-.

- Tighten high-pressure pipe to specified torque ⇒ Fig. ""Installing high-pressure pipe at high-pressure pump"", page 318.
- Install guard plate -1-.
- Install air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Check fuel system for leaks ⇒ "1.3 Checking fuel system for leaks", page 283.

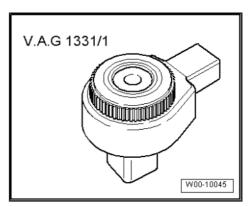




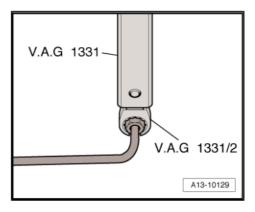
## 6.3 Removing and installing high-pressure pipe

Special tools and workshop equipment required r private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

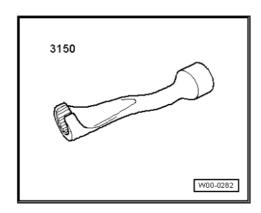
- ♦ Torque wrench V.A.G 193% pect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Ratchet V.A.G 1331/1-



◆ Tool insert (open-end ring spanner, 17 mm) -V.A.G 1331/2-



 Socket SW 14 - 3150- or flared ring spanner tool insert AF 14 - V.A.G 1331/8-



## Procedure

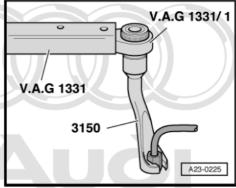


# Note

- The connections of the high-pressure pipes must not be damaged.
- ♦ Do not bend the high-pressure pipes out of shape.
- ◆ Do NOT bend open retaining clamps for fuel pipe.
- If one of the retaining clamps has been bent open or the fuel pipe has to be renewed, the retaining clamps must also be renewed.
- Lubricate threads of union nuts with clean engine oil.
- Hand-tighten union nuts on high-pressure pipes (ensure that pipes are not under tension).

Installing high-pressure pipe at high-pressure pump

- Tighten union nut on high-pressure pipe hand-tight initially.
- Ensure that high-pressure pipe is not under tension.
- To tighten union of high-pressure pipe at high-pressure pump, use torque wrench - V.A.G 1331- with ratchet - V.A.G 1331/1and socket, 14 mm - 3150- .

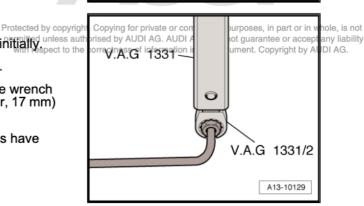


## Installing high-pressure pipe on fuel rail

- Tighten union nut on high-pressure pipe hand-tight initially unless aut
- Ensure that high-pressure pipe is not under tension.
- To tighten high-pressure pipe on fuel rail, use torque wrench
   V.A.G 1331- with tool insert (open-end ring spanner, 17 mm)
   V.A.G 1331/2- .
- Do not install retaining tabs until high-pressure pipes have been tightened.
- Check fuel system for leaks
   ⇒ "1.3 Checking fuel system for leaks", page 283

# Tightening torques

- ♦ "4.1 Exploded view fuel rail with injectors", page 299
- ♦ ⇒ "6.1 Exploded view high-pressure pump", page 312





#### 7 Lambda probes

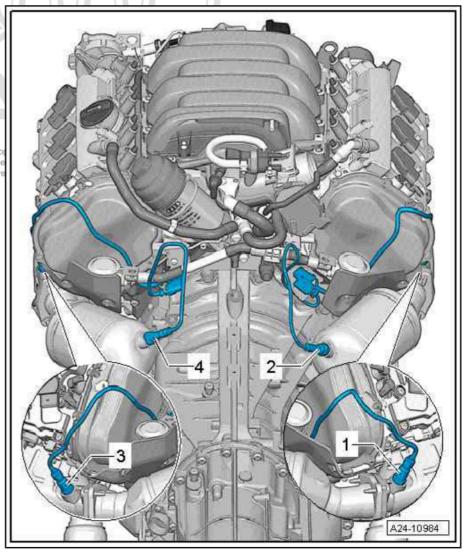
- ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view Lambda probes", page 319
- ⇒ "7.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe", page 320

#### 7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes



#### Note

- New Lambda probes are coated with an assembly paste.
- In the case of a used Lambda probe, coat only the thread with high-temperature paste; refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue for high-temperature paste.
- ♦ The assembly paste / high-temperature paste must not make contact with the slots on the Lambda probe body.
- 1 Lambda probe G39-
  - With Lambda probe heater - Z19-
  - □ Removing and installing ⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing Lambda probe G39 ", page 320
  - □ 55 Nm
- 2 Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130 d unless autho
  - With Lambda probe 1 00 heater after catalytic converter - Z29-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "7.2.3 Removing and installing Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130 ", page 323
  - □ 55 Nm
- 3 Lambda probe 2 G108-
  - With Lambda probe heater 2 - Z28-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "7.2.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 G108 ", page 321
  - □ 55 Nm
- 4 Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131-
  - With Lambda probe 2 heater after catalytic converter - Z30-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "7.2.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 G108 ", page 321
  - □ 55 Nm



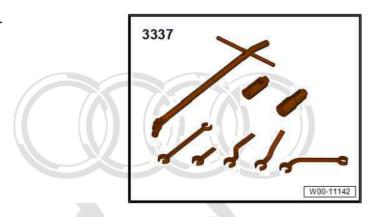
#### 7.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe

- ⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing Lambda probe G39", page 320
- ⇒ "7.2.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 G108", page 321
- $\Rightarrow$  "7.2.3 Removing and installing Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130 ", page 323
- $\Rightarrow$  "7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131 ", page 325

# 7.2.1 Removing and installing Lambda probe

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-



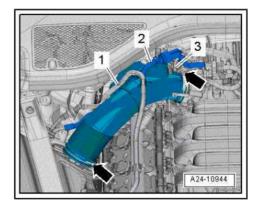
# Removing



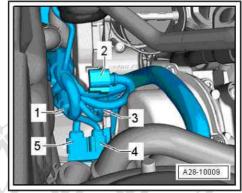
Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing ct to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.
- Move fuel hose -1- and hose -2- from activated charcoal filter clear at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



Unplug electrical connector -4- for Lambda probe - G39- .



Unscrew Lambda probe - G39- -1- using tool from Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337- .



#### Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.

#### Installing

Protected by copyright. Cop permitted unless authorise with respect to the corre

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

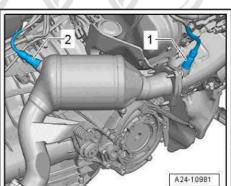
- Threads of new Lambda probes are already coated with assembly paste; the paste must not get into the slots on the probe body.
- ♦ In the case of a used Lambda probe grease only the thread with high-temperature paste. The paste must not get into the slots on the Lambda probe body. High-temperature paste ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- When installing, the Lambda probe wire must always be reattached at the same locations to prevent it from coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

#### Tightening torques

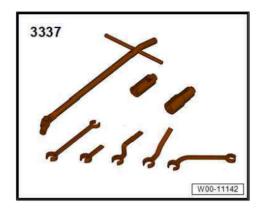
- ♦ ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view Lambda probes", page 319
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285

#### 7.2.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 - G108-

Special tools and workshop equipment required



Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-



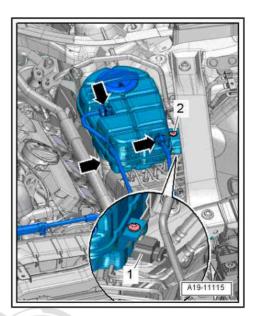
# Removing



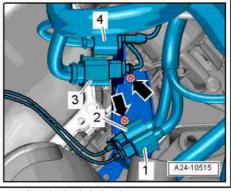
Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Push coolant expansion tank to one side with coolant hoses -arrows- attached.



Unplug electrical connector -2- for Lambda probe 2 - G108- .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Unscrew Lambda probe 2 - G108- -1- using tool from Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337- .



Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following: lal purp

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not with respect to the correctness of information in this docum



Note

- Threads of new Lambda probes are already coated with assembly paste; the paste must not get into the slots on the probe body.
- In the case of a used Lambda probe grease only the thread with high-temperature paste. The paste must not get into the slots on the Lambda probe body. High-temperature paste ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ♦ When installing, the Lambda probe wire must always be reattached at the same locations to prevent it from coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.
- Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

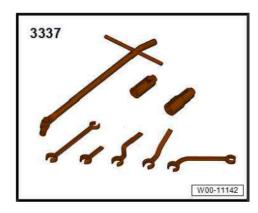
## Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319

#### 7.2.3 Removing and installing Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-

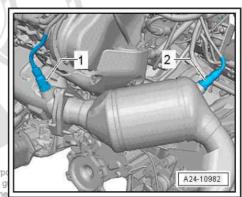


# Removing

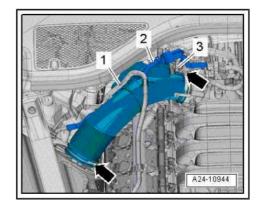


Note

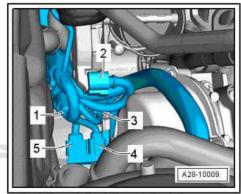
Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.



- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.
- Move clear fuel hose -1- and hose -2- leading to activated charcoal filter at air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.



Unplug electrical connector -5- for Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- .





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Unscrew Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- -2using tool from Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-.



Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- Threads of new Lambda probes are already coated with assembly paste; the paste must not get into the slots on the probe body.
- In the case of a used Lambda probe grease only the thread with high-temperature paste. The paste must not get into the slots on the Lambda probe body. High-temperature paste ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- When installing, the Lambda probe wire must always be reattached at the same locations to prevent it from coming into contact with the exhaust pipe.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", <u>page 64</u>.

#### Tightening torques

- ♦ ⇒ "7.1 Exploded view Lambda probes", page 319
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285

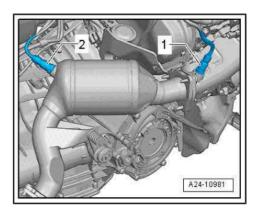
#### 7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131-

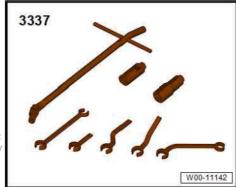
Special tools and workshop equipment required

Lambda probe open ring spanner set - 3337-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





#### Removing

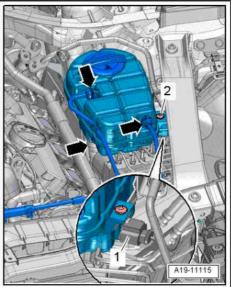


Note

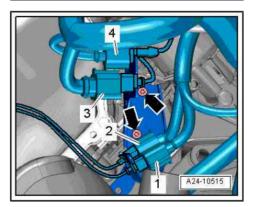
Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

- Remove engine cover panel (rear) ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Push coolant expansion tank to one side with coolant hoses -arrows- attached.





Unplug electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131-.





Unscrew Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- -2- using tool from Lambda probe open ring spanner set -3337-.



#### Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

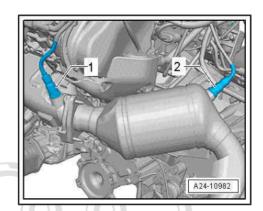


# Note

- Threads of new Lambda probes are already coated with assembly paste; the paste must not get into the slots on the probe
- ♦ In the case of a used Lambda probe grease only the thread with high-temperature paste. The paste must not get into the slots on the Lambda probe body. High-temperature paste ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ♦ When installing, the Lambda probe wire must always bet reating for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not tached at the same locations to prevent it in the property of the property o contact with the exhaust pipe.
- Install engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64.

#### Tightening torques

⇒ "7.1 Exploded view - Lambda probes", page 319



#### Engine control unit 8

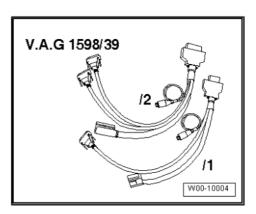
⇒ "8.1 Wiring and component check", page 328

⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623", page 330

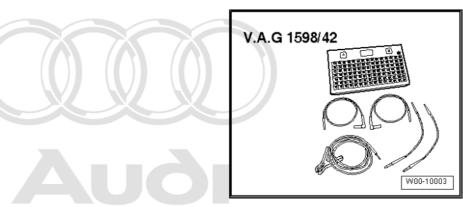
#### 8.1 Wiring and component check

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Adapter cable - V.A.G 1598/39-1-



- Adapter cable V.A.G 1598/39-2-
- Test box V.A.G 1598/42-



Vehicle diagnostic testered by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





#### Note

- The test box V.A.G 1598/42- has 105 sockets. It can be connected to the engine control unit via 2 different adapter cables.
- The engine control unit is connected to the vehicle's wiring harness via two connectors, one of which has 60 pins, the other has 94 pins.
- To carry out tests on the 60-pin wiring harness connector, the Protected by adapter cable - V.A. G. 1598/39 1- is connected to connector permitted unit A- on the test box. For components connected to 60-pin wiring with respendences connector of Current flow diagrams. A Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
  - To carry out tests on the 94-pin wiring harness connector, the adapter cable - V.A.G 1598/39-2- must be connected to connectors -A- and -B- on the test box. For components connected to 94-pin wiring harness connector ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
  - The test box V.A.G 1598/42- is designed so it can be connected both to the wiring harness for the engine control unit and to the engine control unit itself at the same time. The advantage of this is that the electronic engine control system remains fully functional when the test box is connected (for example, for measuring signals when the engine is running).
  - Always use auxiliary measuring set V.A.G 1527B- to connect test equipment (e.g. voltage tester - V.A.G 1526E-, hand-held multimeter - V.A.Ğ 1594Č- etc.).



## Caution

Risk of irreparable damage to electronic components.

- Select the appropriate measuring range before connecting the test leads and observe test requirements.
- Remove engine control unit J623-⇒ "8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit J623 ', page 330 .
- Connect test box V.A.G 1598/42- to wiring harness connector. The earth clip on the test box must be connected to the negative battery terminal. The instructions for performing the individual tests indicate whether or not the engine control unit J623- itself also needs to be connected to the test box.
- Carry out test as described in appropriate repair procedures.

Installing engine control unit

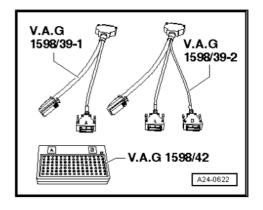
Installation is performed in the reverse sequence.

The procedure required after connecting the new engine control unit is described in the Guided Fault Finding or Guided Functions.



#### Note

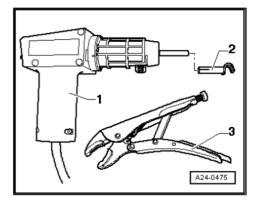
After completion of the Guided Fault Finding routine, the tester will attempt to erase the event memories of all control units. If this is not successful, the remaining events saved in the memories must be dealt with so that all event memory entries can be erased.



#### 8.2 Removing and installing engine/motor control unit - J623-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Hot air blower - VAS 1978/14A- -item 1- with nozzle attachment -2- from wiring harness repair set - VAS 1978 B-

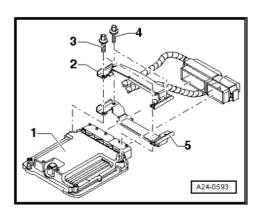


Small, commercially available mole grips -3-



#### Note

- Not every engine control unit is bolted to a protective housing. Whether a protective housing is fitted depends on the engine/ gearbox combination.
- The engine control unit -1- is bolted to a protective casing -2 and 5-. To make it more difficult to unscrew the shear bolts -4- for locking plate -2-, their threads have been coated with locking fluid.
- The metal locking plate has to be removed before the connectors can be unplugged from the engine control unit (e.g. to connect the test box or renew the engine control unit).

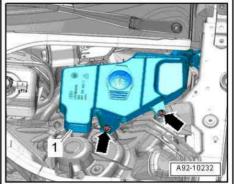


#### Removing

- When renewing engine control unit, select diagnosis object "Replace engine control unit" in "Guided Functions" mode of vehicle diagnostic tester.
- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
- Remove plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum chamber cover

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Unscrew bolts arrows and pull filler neck out of washer fluid UDI AG reservoir and through opening in body to right side.



Release catch -arrow- and detach engine control unit - J623--item 1-.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

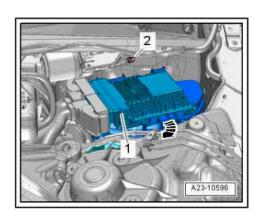
Perform the following work steps if a protective housing is fitted:



#### Caution

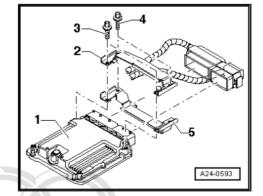
Wiring, connectors, insulation and control units can be burnt and damaged.

Keep exactly to the following procedure. Observe the instructions for operating the hot air blower.

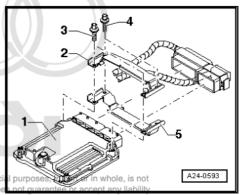


To help prevent unauthorised access to the connectors on the engine control unit, the engine control unit -1- is bolted to a protective housing -5- by means of shear bolts -3 and 4- and a locking plate -2-.

The threads of the two shear bolts -4- which are not screwed into the engine control unit are secured with locking fluid. To unscrew these two bolts, the threads must therefore be heated with the hot air blower.



The threads of the two shear bolts -3- which are screwed into the engine control unit are not secured with locking fluid. Do not apply heat to the threads in the control unit housing; this is not necessary and would cause overheating of the control unit.



permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG doe with respect to the correctness of information in this

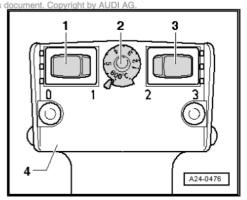
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commer

Select settings on hot air blower as shown in illustration, i.e. set temperature potentiometer -2- to maximum heat output and two-stage air flow switch -3- to position 3.

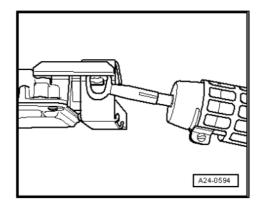


#### WARNING

The shear bolts and protective housing also become very hot when heating the threads of the locking mechanism. Take care to avoid burns. It is also important to ensure that only the thread is heated and none of the surrounding components if at all possible. These should be covered if necessary.



- Apply heat to the threads of the shear bolts on the connector side for approx. 25 to 30 seconds.
- Unscrew shear bolts using mole grips (see arrow in illustra-



- The two shear bolts screwed into the engine control unit do not need to be heated. They should be removed without being heated.
- Detach protective housing from control unit connectors.
- Release connectors on engine control unit and unplug connectors.

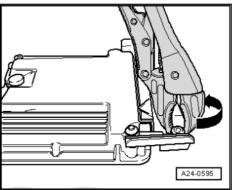
#### Installing

Installation is performed in the reverse sequence.

- After installation, the protective housing must be re-fitted on the engine control unit - J623- .
- Clean threaded holes for shear bolts to remove any residue from locking fluid. This can be done using a thread tap.
- Always use new shear bolts.
- Install filler neck for washer fluid reservoir ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 92; Windscreen washer system; Exploded view windscreen washer system .
- Install plenum chamber cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Removing and installing plenum

After installing a new engine control unit, the following operation must be performed:

Activate engine control unit via a vehicle diagnostic tester in rivate or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not "Guided Functions" mode, "Replace engine control unit" AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





#### 26 – Exhaust system

# Exhaust pipes/silencers

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- ⇒ "1.2 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers", page 336
- ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338
- ⇒ "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339
- ⇒ "1.5 Checking exhaust system for leaks", page 340

#### 1.1 Exploded view - silencers

#### 1 - Bolt

□ 20 Nm

## 2 - Mounting

- Renew if damaged
- Protected by copyright. Capying fact permitted unless authorized Stress-Hee alignwith respectment of exhaustrsyston in tem", page 339

#### 3 - Centre silencer

- Combined in one unit with rear silencers as original equipment. Can be renewed individually for repair purposes
- Remove diagonal struts prior to removal ⇒ Fig. ""Diagonal struts (Audi A7)"", page 336
- Cutting point ⇒ "1.2 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers", page 336
- Align exhaust system so it is free of stress ⇒ "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339

#### 4 - Rear silencer

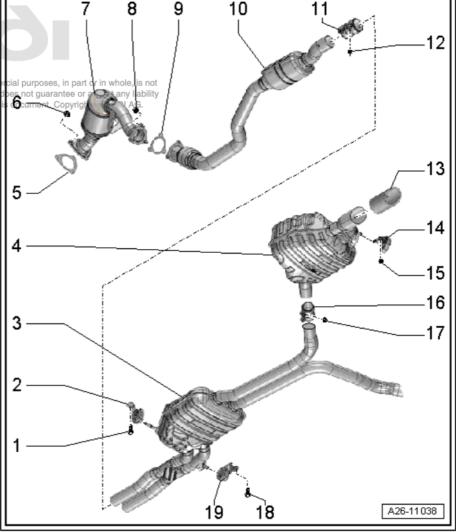
- Combined as one unit with centre silencer as original equipment
- Centre silencer and rear silencer can be renewed separately
- □ Remove diagonal struts prior to removal ⇒ Fig. ""Diagonal struts (Audi A7)"", page 336
- □ Cutting point: centre silencer / rear silencer ⇒ "1.2 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers", page 336
- □ Align exhaust system so it is free of stress ⇒ "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339

#### 5 - Gasket

Renew

#### 6 - Nut

□ 23 Nm



_	Reflew
	20 Nm
16 - Clamp (rear)	
	For separate replacement of centre and rear silencers
	Installation position ⇒ Fig. ""Installation position of rear clamps"", page 335
	Before tightening, align exhaust system so it is free of stress  ⇒ "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339
	Tighten bolted connections evenly
17 - Nut	
	23 Nm
18 - Bolt	
	23 Nm
334	Rep. gr.26 - Exhaust system

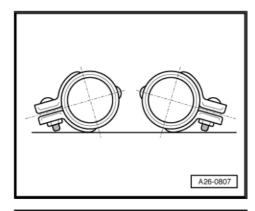


#### 19 - Mounting

- Renew if damaged
- ☐ Check preload ⇒ "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339

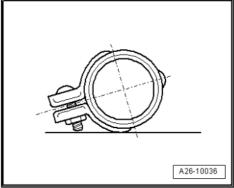
#### Installation position of front clamps

- Install clamps so that the bolt ends do not protrude beyond bottom of clamp.
- Installation position: bolted connections face outwards.



# Installation position of rear clamps

- Install clamps so that the bolt ends do not protrude beyond bottom of clamp.
- Installation position: bolted connections face forwards.



Components of mountings for catalytic converter - vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW (front-wheel drive)

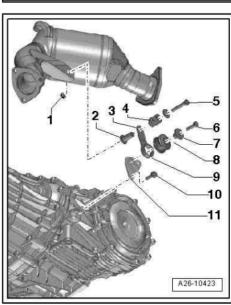
- 1 Nut, 23 Nm
- 2 -Spacer sleeve
- 3 -Compression spring
- 4 -Washer
- Bolt 5 -
- 6 -Bolt, 23 Nm
- Spacer sleeve 7 -
- 8 -Buffer
- **Bracket** 9 -
- 10 Bolt, 23 Nm
- 11 Bracket



Note

The illustration shows the right-side mounting. The mountings (left-side) are symmetrically reversed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Components of mountings for catalytic converter - vehicles with manual gearbox or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5

- Nut, 23 Nm
- 2 -Spacer sleeve
- Compression spring
- Washer
- Bolt 5 -
- Bolt, 23 Nm 6 -
- 7 -Spacer sleeve
- 8 -Buffer
- **Bracket**
- 10 Bolt, 23 Nm
- 11 Bracket

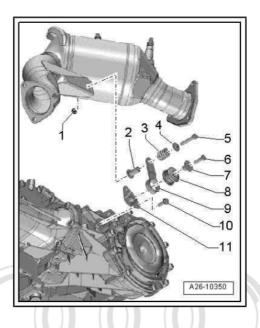


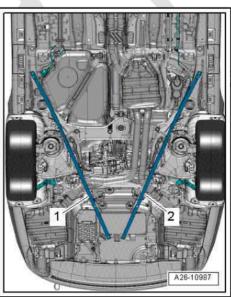
Note

The illustration shows the right-side mounting. The mountings (left-side) are symmetrically reversed.

## Diagonal struts (Audi A7)

- Remove diagonal struts -1- and -2- when removing centre silencer and rear silencer unit.
- Install diagonal struts ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Repted by or gr. 42; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe. with respect





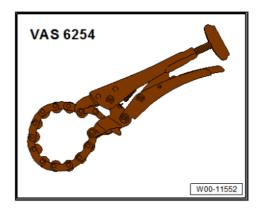
in whole, is not cept any liability v AUDI AG.

#### 1.2 Separating exhaust pipes/silencers

- The connecting pipe can be cut through at the cutting point in order to renew the centre or rear silencer separately.
- The cutting point is marked by an indentation on the circumference of the exhaust pipe.

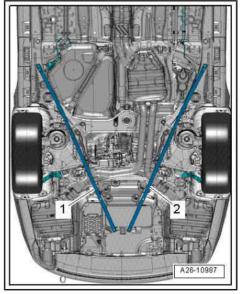
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Chain pipe cutter - VAS 6254-

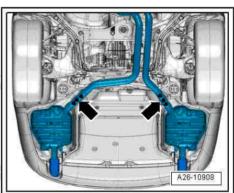


#### Procedure

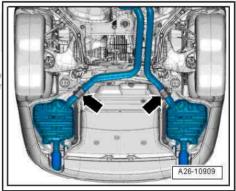
Audi A7: Remove bolts on both sides and detach diagonal struts -1- and -2-.



- Cut through exhaust pipes at right angles at the positions marked -arrows- using chain pipe cutter - VAS 6254- .



- Position centre of clamps -arrows- over cutting location.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpose permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua with respect to the correctness of information in this document

- Install clamps so that the bolt ends do not protrude beyond bottom of clamp.
- Installation position: bolted connections face forwards.
- Align the exhaust system so it is free of stress "1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- Diagonal struts ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 42; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe

# A26-10036

#### 1.3 Removing and installing front silencer

#### Removing

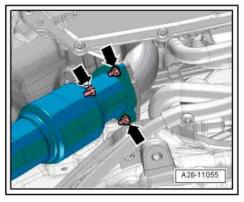
- Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation .
- Unscrew nuts -arrows- for front silencer (left-side).

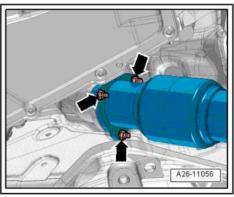


Unscrew nuts -arrows- for front silencer (right-side).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.









#### Caution

Risk of damage to flexible joints in front silencer.

- Do NOT bend the flexible joint in the front silencer more than 10°.
- Release and push back clamp -1- or -2- and detach relevant front silencer.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



#### Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Align the exhaust system so it is free of stress '1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system", page 339

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation

#### 1.4 Stress-free alignment of exhaust system part or in whole, is not

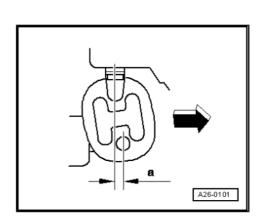
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

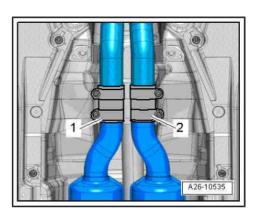
# Procedure

The exhaust system must be aligned when it is cool.

Vehicles without clamps between centre silencer and rear silencers

- Loosen bolted connections on front clamps.
- Push exhaust system towards front of vehicle -arrow- until mountings in front of centre silencer are preloaded by -a- = 6 ... 10 mm.
- Tighten bolted connections on clamps evenly.
- Align tailpipes ⇒ page 340 .





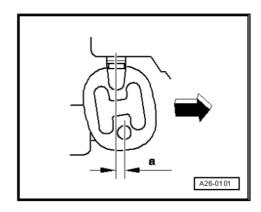
Vehicles with clamps between centre silencer and rear silencers

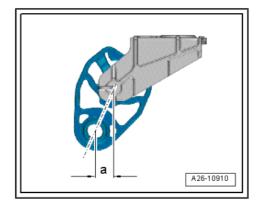


# Note

On a vehicle with clamps fitted between the centre silencer and rear silencers, it is also necessary to align the centre silencer.

- Loosen bolted connections on front and rear clamps.
- Push exhaust system towards front of vehicle -arrow- until mountings in front of centre silencer are preloaded by -a- = 6 ... 10 mm.
- Tighten bolted connections on front clamps evenly.
- Push rear section of exhaust system towards front of vehicle -arrow-, so that mountings (rear) for rear silencers are preloaded by -a- = 11 ... 15 mm.
- Align rear silencers so they are horizontal.
- Tighten bolted connections on rear clamps evenly.
- Align tailpipes ⇒ page 340.



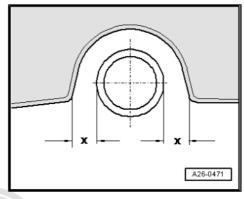


#### Aligning tailpipes

- Tightening torque 1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333
- Check clearance between tailpipes and bumper on both sides:
- Dimension -x- (left-side) = dimension -x- (right-side)

#### Tightening torques

⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333



#### 1.5 Checking exhaust system for leaks

- Start the engine and run at idling speed.
- Plug tailpipes during leak test (e.g. with cloth or plugs).
- Listen for noise at connections between cylinder head/exhaust manifold, exhaust manifold/front exhaust pipe, etc. to locate any leaks.
- Rectify any leaks that are found.



#### 2 Emission control system

- ⇒ "2.1 Removing and installing catalytic converters", page 341
- 2.1 Removing and installing catalytic converters
- ⇒ "2.1.1 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) vehicles with manual gearbox", page 341
- ⇒ "2.1.2 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW", page 343
- ⇒ "2.1.3 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 343
- ⇒ "2.1.4 Removing and installing catalytic converter (right side) are or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not vehicles with manual gearbox/multitronic learbox (DAW) by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability page 347. page 347
- ⇒ "2.1.5 Removing and installing catalytic converter (right-side) vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5", page 347
- 2.1.1 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) - vehicles with manual gearbox

Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

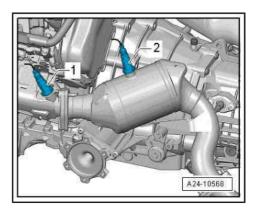
- Remove Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131-⇒ "7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after cata-<u>lytic converter G131 ", page 325</u> .
- Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace .



#### Caution

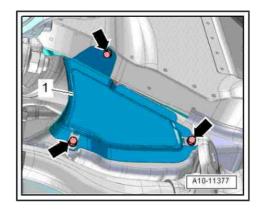
Risk of damage to running gear components.

- The vehicle must NOT be lowered onto its wheels if the engine/gearbox mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly installed.
- Remove front silencer (left-side) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338
- Detach intermediate steering shaft from steering rack and move clear by sliding splines together ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.





Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (left-side) -1on subframe.



- Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -1-.
- Detach catalytic converter (left-side).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

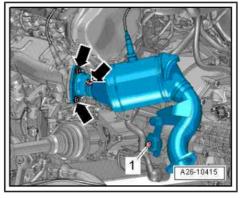


#### Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Install intermediate steering shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.
- Install front silencer ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338.
- Install Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131-⇒ "7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131 ", page 325 .

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- ⇒ Fig. ""Components of mountings for catalytic converter vehicles with manual gearbox or 7-speed dual clutch gearbox 0B5"", page 336
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not Subframe cross brace in Running gear, axles, steering, Repept any liability gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view or subframe ocument. Copyright by AUDI AG.





#### 2.1.2 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) - vehicles with multitronic gearbox 0AW

## Removing

- Gearbox removed ⇒ Rep. gr. 37; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox
- Remove electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- from bracket and unplug connector.



Note

Disregard items -2, 3, 4- and -arrows-.

Unscrew nuts -arrows- and detach catalytic converter (leftside).



Note

- For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.
- Disregard -item 1-.

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.

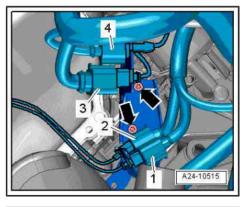
  Cooving for private of commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high and temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

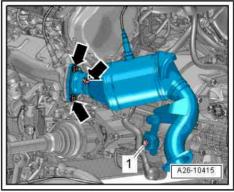
# **Tightening torques**

- ♦ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- 2.1.3 Removing and installing catalytic converter (left-side) - vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5

Special tools and workshop equipment required

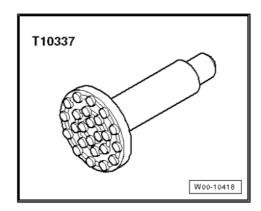
Engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A-







Gearbox support - T10337-



#### Removing



#### Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

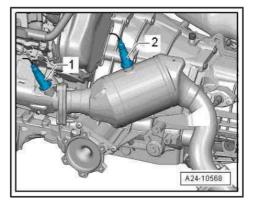
- Remove Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131- $\Rightarrow$  "7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131 ", page 325
- Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace.

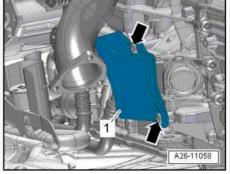


#### Caution

Risk of damage to running gear components.

- The vehicle must NOT be lowered onto its wheels if the engine/gearbox mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly installed.
- Remove front silencer (left-side) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338.
- Detach intermediate steering shaft from steering rack and move clear by sliding splines together ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and remove cover -1- from side of gearbox.

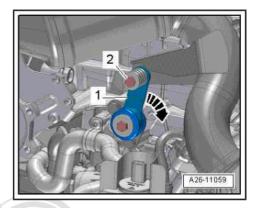




Protected by copy permitted unless with respect to

whole, is not pt any liability AUDI AG.

Loosen bolted connection -2- and swivel bracket -1- to rear

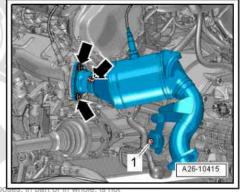


- Remove nuts -arrows-.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for

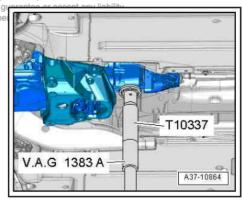
- Fit gearbox support T103377 onto engine and gearbox jack documents - V.A.G 1383 A- and position underneath gearbox.
- Raise gearbox slightly using engine and gearbox jack.

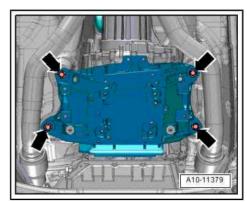


# WARNING

Risk of accident.

- ◆ Engine and gearbox jack V.A.G 1383 A- must remain in position when work is being carried out and must not be left unattended under the vehicle.
- Remove bolts -arrows- for tunnel cross member.





- Lower tunnel cross member as far as distance -a- using engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A- .
- Distance -a- = 70 mm (maximum)
- Detach catalytic converter (left-side).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

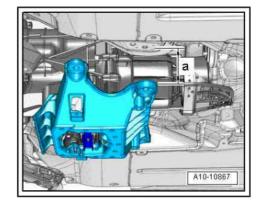


#### Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Install intermediate steering shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 48; Steering column; Removing and installing intermediate steering shaft.
- Install front silencer ⇒ page 338.
- Install Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131-⇒ "7.2.4 Removing and installing Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter G131 ", page 325 .

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- Subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- Tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings
- Cover on gearbox ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; ATF circuit; Exploded view ATF circuit





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### 2.1.4 Removing and installing catalytic converter (right-side) - vehicles with manual gearbox/multitronic gearbox 0AW

#### Removing

- Gearbox removed  $\Rightarrow$  Rep. gr. 34 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox or  $\Rightarrow$  Rep. gr. 37 ; Removing and installing gearbox; Removing gearbox .
- Take electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe after catalytic converter - G130- out of bracket, unplug and move clear.



Note

Disregard items -2, 3, 4- and -arrows-.

- Detach catalytic converter (right-side).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

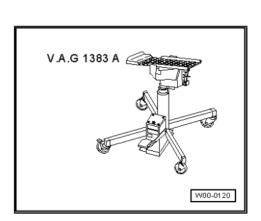
- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

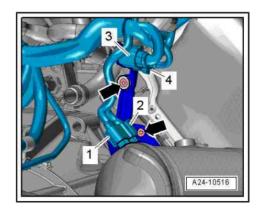
#### **Tightening torques**

- ♦ #1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- Removing and installing catalytic con-verter (right-side) vehicles with iduals sauthorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. 2.1.5 clutch gearbox 0B5

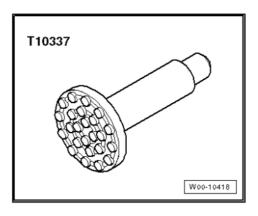
Special tools and workshop equipment required

◆ Engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A-





Gearbox support - T10337-



#### Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

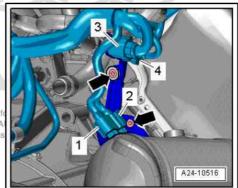
- Remove front silencer (right-side) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338
- Remove subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Removing and installing subframe cross brace.



#### Caution

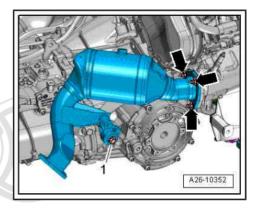
Risk of damage to running gear components.

- The vehicle must NOT be lowered onto its wheels if the engine/gearbox mountings, steering rack or subframe cross brace are not properly installed.
- Remove plenum chamber partition panel ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel .
- Remove throttle valve module J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298.
- Remove coolant pipe from right side of gearbox ⇒ "3.2.6 Removing and installing coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox", page 248.
- Remove Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-⇒ "7.2.3 Removing and installing Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130 ", page 323 .
- Detach electrical connectors -1 ... 4- from bracket.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach bracket.



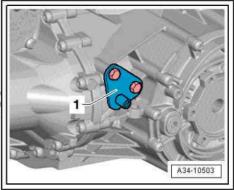
Protected by copyright. Copying permitted unless authorised by with respect to the correctne

Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -1- and move catalytic converter (right-side) towards rear.

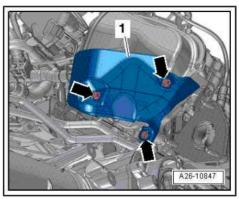


Remove bolts and detach retainer -1- for bracket for exhaust system.





- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield.

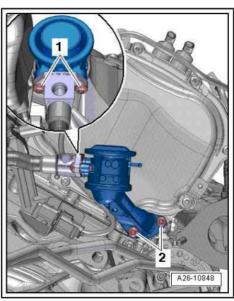


 Remove bolts -2-, detach combination valve (right-side) for secondary air system and press it to left side with secondary air hose connected.

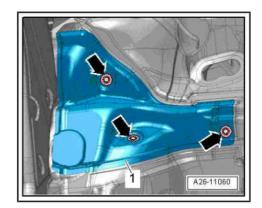


Note

Disregard -item 1-.



Release fasteners -arrows- and detach heat shield -1- for tunnel (top right).



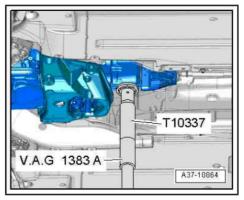
- Fit gearbox support T10337- onto engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A- and position underneath gearbox.
- Raise gearbox slightly using engine and gearbox jack.

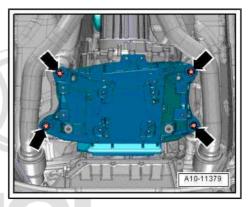


#### WARNING

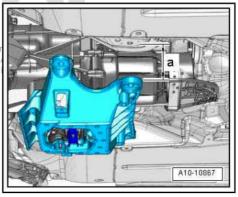
Risk of accident.

- ◆ Engine and gearbox jack V.A.G 1383 A- must remain in position when work is being carried out and must not be left unattended under the vehicle.
- Remove bolts -arrows- for tunnel cross member.





- Lower tunnel cross member as far as distance -a- using engine and gearbox jack - V.A.G 1383 A- .
- Distance -a- = 60 mm (maximum) Protected by copyright. Copying for private or copermitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI with respect to the correctness of information





- Secure gearbox in position using retaining tool VW 785/1 B-, as shown in illustration.
- Lift off catalytic converter (right-side).

#### Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



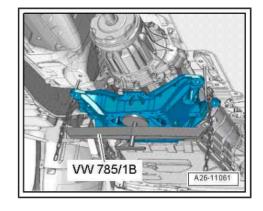
#### Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Install combination valve for secondary air (right-side) ⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (right-<u>side)", page 360</u> .
- Install Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-⇒ "7.2.3 Removing and installing Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130 ", page 323
- Install coolant pipe (right-side) on gearbox ⇒ "3.2.5 Removing and installing coolant pipe (left-side) on gearbox", page 246.
- Install throttle valve module J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338" page 298.
- Install plenum chamber partition panel ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 50; Bulkhead; Exploded view - plenum chamber partition panel .

## Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- ⇒ Fig. ""Components of mountings for catalytic converter vehicles with manual gearbox or 7-speed dual court by copyright. Copyring for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
  gearbox 0B5"", page 336

  with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG. with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Tunnel cross-piece ⇒ Rep. gr. 34; Assembly mountings; Exploded view - assembly mountings
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Strips / trim panels / extensions; Exploded view - heat shield
- Subframe cross brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe



#### 3 Secondary air system

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view secondary air system", page 352
- ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing secondary air pump motor V101
- ⇒ "3.3 Checking combination valve for secondary air system", page 355

#### 3.1 Exploded view - secondary air system

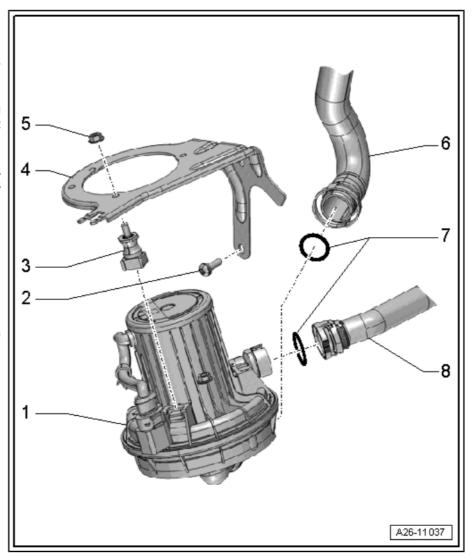
Secondary air pump motor - V<sub>P</sub>101-rotected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Note

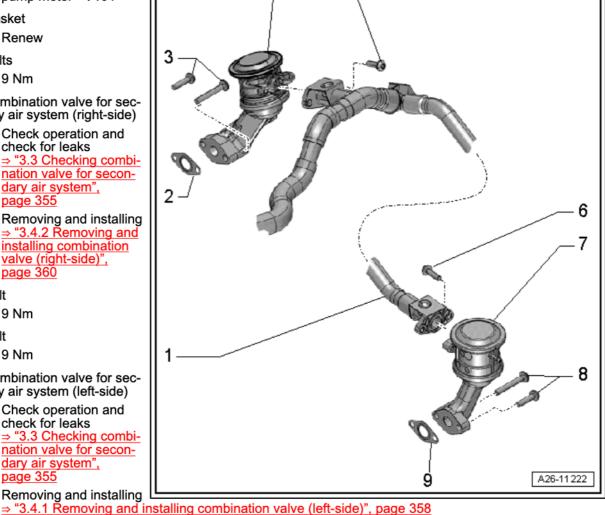
The illustration shows the version for the 2.8 ltr. engine.

- 1 Secondary air pump motor V101-
  - ☐ Fitting location: At front right of engine compartment below longitudinal member
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.2 Removing and installing secondary air pump motor V101 page 353
  - ☐ Check in Guided Fault Finding ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester
- 2 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 3 Bonded rubber bush
  - □ 3x
- 4 Bracket
  - For secondary air pump motor - V101-
- 5 Nut
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Hose
  - For secondary air
  - □ From air cleaner
- 7 O-rings
  - □ Renew
- 8 Hose
  - For secondary air
  - To combination valves for secondary air inlet



Combination valves for secondary air system

- 1 Hose
  - ☐ From secondary air pump motor - V101-
- 2 Gasket
  - Renew
- 3 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 4 Combination valve for secondary air system (right-side)
  - Check operation and check for leaks ⇒ "3.3 Checking combination valve for secondary air system", page 355
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (right-side)", page 360
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 7 Combination valve for secondary air system (left-side)
  - □ Check operation and check for leaks ⇒ "3.3 Checking combination valve for secondary air system", page 355
  - □ Removing and installing



- 8 Bolts
  - □ 9 Nm
- 9 Gasket
  - Renew
- 3.2 Removing and installing secondary air pump motor - V101-

Removing

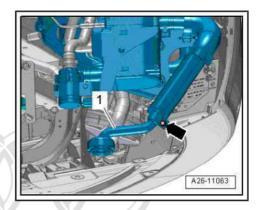


Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

 Remove wheel spoiler (front right) ⇒ General body repairs, Protected exterior: Reprigr p66 Wheel housing liners: Exploded view permitted unless authorised by 1 in AG, AUULAG does not guarantee or accept any lial with respect housing liner of accept any lial with respect housing liner of accept any lial with respect to the control of the cont

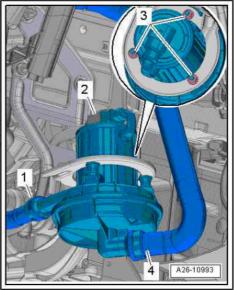
- Vehicles with auxiliary heater: Release clamp -arrow- and swivel exhaust pipe for auxiliary heater -1- to rear.
- Remove air intake grille (right-side) from bottom section of bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.



#### Vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine:

- Unplug electrical connector -2- at secondary air pump motor -V101- .
- Press release tabs and detach secondary air hoses -1- and
- Remove nuts -3- and detach secondary air pump.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AU with respect to the correctness of information



# Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

- Unplug electrical connector -4- at secondary air pump motor -
- Press release tabs and detach secondary air hoses -1- and -2-.
- Remove nuts -3- and detach secondary air pump.

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



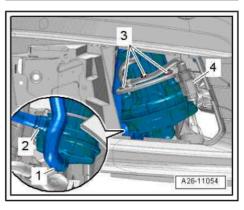
Note

## Fit new O-rings.

Install tailpipe for auxiliary heater ⇒ Auxiliary heater, supplementary heater; Rep. gr. 82; Auxiliary/supplementary heater; Removing and installing exhaust system.

#### Tightening torques

- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view secondary air system", page 352
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)





#### 3.3 Checking combination valve for secondary air system

 $\Rightarrow$  "3.3.1 Checking combination valve for secondary air system - vehicles up to model year 2013", page 355

⇒ "3.3.2 Checking combination valve for secondary air system vehicles from model year 2013 onwards", page 356

# 3.3.1 Checking combination valve for secondary air system - vehicles up to model year 2013

#### Procedure

· No leaks in hose connections.

Combination valve for secondary air system (left-side):

 Remove body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Removing and installing body brace .

Combination valve for secondary air system (right-side):

Remove throttle valve module - J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338". page 298.

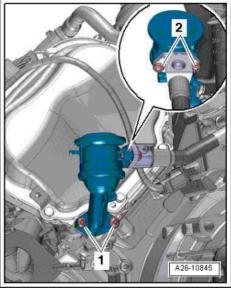
Both sides (continued):

Remove bolts -2- and press secondary air hoses to side.

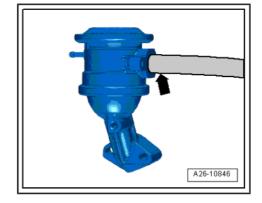


Disregard -item 1-.

Protected by copyright. C permitted unless authoris with respect to the cor



- Connect suitable hose -arrow- to combination valve for secondary air, as shown in illustration.
- Blow lightly into test hose with your mouth (do not use compressed air).
- The combination valve for secondary air system should be closed; it should not be possible to blow through the hose.
- Blow more firmly (i.e. with greater pressure) into test hose with your mouth (do not use compressed air).
- The combination valve for secondary air system should open; it should now be possible to blow through the hose.





# Note

It is necessary to overcome slight initial resistance before it is possible to blow through the hose.

Renew combination valve for secondary air system if you cannot determine the switching point: (left-side) '3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (leftside)", page 358, (right-side) ⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (rightside)", page 360

# Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Hose connections and air pipes/hoses must be free of oil and grease prior to fitting.
- Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not **Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips** DI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue ation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- The screw sections of used screw-type clips must be sprayed with rust remover prior to fitting so that the air hoses can be attached securely to the hose connections.
- Install throttle valve module J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298.

# Tightening torques

- Body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view - suspension strut, upper links
- 3.3.2 Checking combination valve for secondary air system - vehicles from model year 2013 onwards

Special tools and workshop equipment required

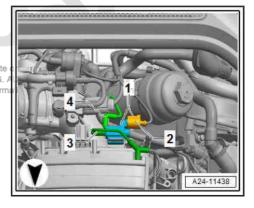
Hand vacuum pump - VAS 6213-

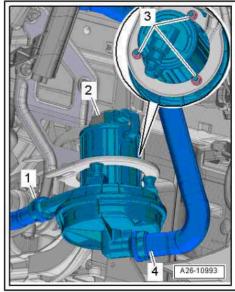


- Vacuum hoses and hose connections do not leak.
- Vacuum hoses are not clogged.
- Remove engine cover panels ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel", page 64
- Follow vacuum hose -4- downwards to Y-connector.
- Disconnect vacuum hose for combination valve being checked from Y-connector.
- Connect hand vacuum pump VAS 6213c116 vacuum noonse of private combination valve to be checked.
- Remove wheel spoiler (front right) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view wheel housing liner (front).
- Remove air intake grille (right-side) from bottom section of bumper cover ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 63; Bumper (front); Removing and installing attachments.



Press release tabs and detach secondary air hose -1- from secondary air pump motor - V101- .





# Vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine:

Press release tabs and detach secondary air hose -2- from secondary air pump motor - V101-.

# All vehicles (continued)

- Blow lightly into secondary air hose with your mouth (do not use compressed air). Fit auxiliary hose if secondary air hose is not long enough.
- The combination valves for secondary air should be closed; it should not be possible to blow through the hose.
- Operate hand vacuum pump.
- The combination valve should open; it should now be possible to blow through the hose.



Note

It is necessary to overcome slight initial resistance before it is possible to blow through the hose.

Renew combination valve for secondary air system if it does not open: left-side ⇒ "3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (left-side)", page 358, right-side
⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (rightside)", page 360.

#### 3.4 Removing and installing combination valve

⇒ "3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (left-side)",

⇒ "3.4.2 Removing and installing combination valve (right-side)", page 360

### 3.4.1 Removing and installing combination valve (left-side)

# Removing

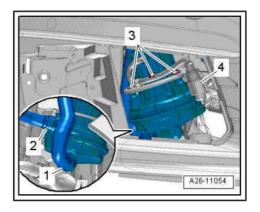


Note

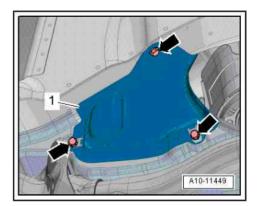
Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

- Remove body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Removing and installing body brace .
- Remove front silencer (left-side) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (right-side) -1- on subframe.

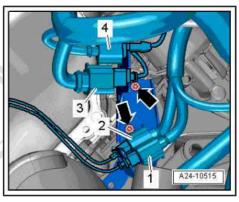


Take electrical connector -1- for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- out of bracket, unplug and move clear.



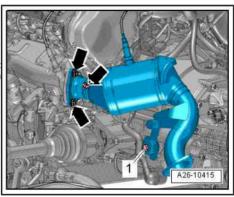
Note

Disregard items -2, 3, 4- and -arrows-.

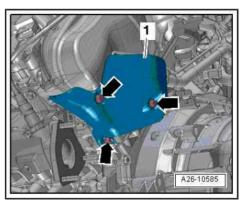


Remove nuts -arrows- and bolt -1-, detach catalytic converter (left-side) from exhaust manifold and move to rear.

> Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrigh



- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield -1-.



Unscrew bolts -1- and -2- and remove combination valve for secondary air system (left-side).

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

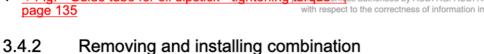
# Renew gasket.

Install catalytic converter (left-side) and front silencer ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333

# Tightening torques

- Heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- Body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view suspension strut, upper links





# Removing

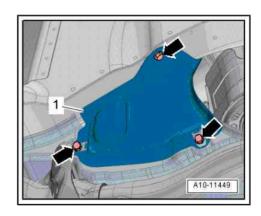


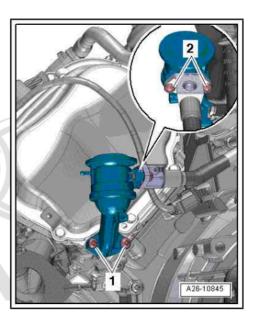
Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

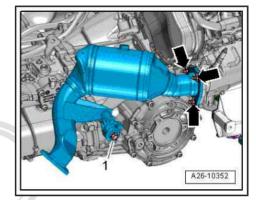
valve (right-side)

- Remove front silencer (right-side) ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing front silencer", page 338
- Remove wheel housing liner (front right) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Removing and installing wheel housing liner (front) .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (right-side) -1- on subframe.
- Remove throttle valve module J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298.





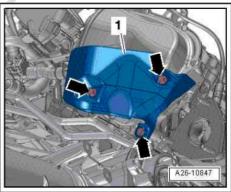
- Move clear electrical wiring for Lambda probe 2 after catalytic converter - G131- .
- Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows-, detach catalytic converter (right-side) from exhaust manifold and move to rear.



If fitted, remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyrig



Remove bolts -2- and detach combination valve (right-side) for secondary air system and bolts -1- for secondary air hose.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



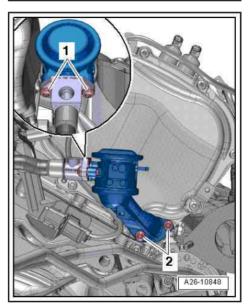
Note

# Renew gasket.

- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install throttle valve module J338-⇒ "3.6 Removing and installing throttle valve module J338", page 298.
- Install catalytic converter (right-side) and front silencer ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333

# Tightening torques

- ♦ ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view secondary air system", page 352
- Heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- ♦ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Wheel housing liners; Exploded view - wheel housing liner (front)



#### 4 Exhaust manifolds

- ⇒ "4.1 Exploded view exhaust manifolds", page 362
- ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifolds", page 363

#### 4.1 Exploded view - exhaust manifolds

- 1 Nut
  - Renew
  - Coat thread with hightemperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - Tightening torque and tightening sequence: left-side ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 363; right-side
    - ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (right-side) tightening torque and sequence", page 363
- 2 Bracket for heat shield
- 3 Exhaust manifold
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "4.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifolds", page 363
- 4 Gasket
  - □ Renew
- 5 Heat shield
- 6 Bolt
  - □ 10 Nm
- 7 Lambda probe before catalytic converter
  - Cylinder bank 1 (rightside): Lambda probe -G39-
- 6 right. Copying for private or com al purposes, in part or in whole, is not oes not guarantee or accept any liability 8 his document. Copyright by AUDI/AG. permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A with respect to the correctness of information 9 10 2 A26-10031
- ☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): Lambda probe 2 G108-
- □ Removing and installing ⇒ "7.2 Removing and installing Lambda probe", page 320
- 8 Catalytic converter
  - □ Exploded view ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333
- 9 Nut
  - □ Renew
  - ☐ Coat thread with high-temperature paste; for high-temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
  - □ 23 Nm
- 10 Gasket
  - □ Renew



Exhaust manifold (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence



Note

- Renew nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Tighten nuts in 3 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Nuts	Tightening torque	
1.	-1 9-	Screw in by hand until contact is made	
2.	-1 9-	15 Nm	
3.	-1 9-	25 Nm	

Exhaust manifold (right-side) - tightening torque and sequence



Note

- Renew nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Tighten nuts in 3 stages in the sequence shown:

Stage	Nuts	Tightening torque	
1.	-1 9-	Screw in by hand until contact is made	
2.	-1 9-	15 Nm	
3.	-1 9-	25 Nm	

#### 4.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifolds

⇒ "4.2.1 Removing and installing exhaust manifold (left-side)",

⇒ "4.2.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifold (right-side)", page 367

### 4.2.1 Removing and installing exhaust manifold (left-side)

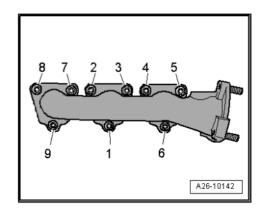
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not **Removing**s authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

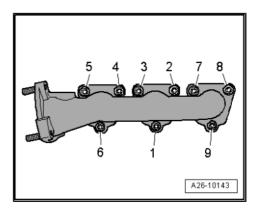


Note

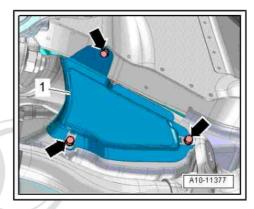
Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

- Remove body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Removing and installing body brace.
- Remove noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Detach poly V-belt from air conditioner compressor ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66



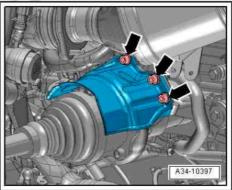


- Remove air conditioner compressor ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Detaching and attaching air conditioner compressor at bracket .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (left-side) -1on subframe.



- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield for drive shaft (left-side).
- Unbolt drive shaft (left-side) from gearbox flange shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Removing and installing drive shaft.







# Caution

Risk of damage to flexible joints in front silencer.

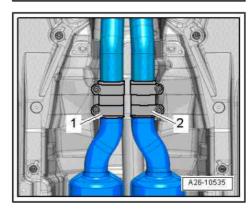
- Do NOT bend the flexible joint in the front silencer more than 10°.
- Loosen and push back clamp -1- and tie up front silencer (leftside).

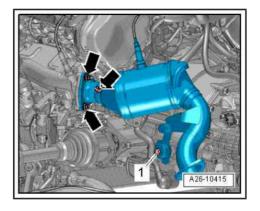


# Note

Disregard -item 2-.

Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and push catalytic converter (left-side) towards rear of vehicle.





Take electrical connector -2- for Lambda probe 2 - G108- out of bracket, unplug and move wiring clear.

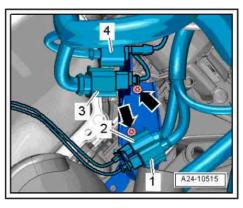


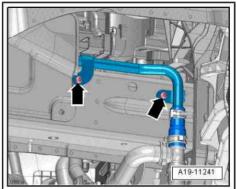
Note

Disregard -items 1, 2, 3, 4- and -arrows-.

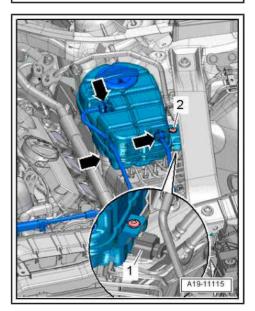
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Unscrew nuts -arrows- and move clear coolant pipe on longitudinal member.

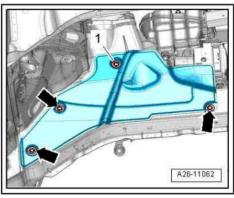




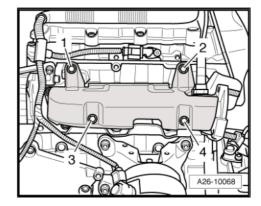
- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2- and push coolant expansion tank to side with coolant hoses -arrows- connected.



Release fasteners -1- and -arrows- and detach heat shield from longitudinal member (left-side).



Remove bolts -1 ... 4- and detach heat shield.



- Remove nuts -1- and -8- and detach bracket for heat shield.
- Remove nuts -2 ... 7- and -9- and detach exhaust manifold.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

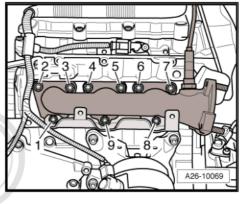


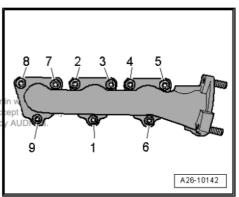
#### Note

- Renew gasket and self-locking nuts.
- Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Fit exhaust manifold with gasket for catalytic converter and tighten nuts ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (left-side) - tightening torque and sequence"", page 363.
- Electrical connections and routing ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.
- Install catalytic converter (left-side) y AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view silencers", page 333 ation in this document. Copyright
- Install poly V-belt ⇒ "1.2 Removing and installing poly V-belt", page 66.

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (left-side) tightening torque and sequence"", page 363
- ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Exploded view - drive shaft
- Body brace ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Suspension strut, upper links; Exploded view - suspension strut, upper links
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Strips / trim panels / extensions; Exploded view - heat shield
- Heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- ⇒ Heating, air conditioning; Rep. gr. 87; Air conditioner compressor; Exploded view - air conditioner compressor drive unit
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation







#### 4.2.2 Removing and installing exhaust manifold (right-side)

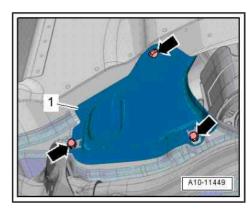
# Removing



Note

Fit all cable ties in the original positions when installing.

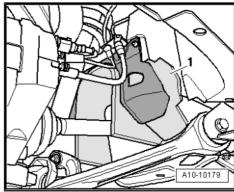
- Remove noise insulation panels ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.
- Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Remove Lambda probe G39-⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing Lambda probe G39", page 320.
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach heat shield (right-side) -1- on subframe.

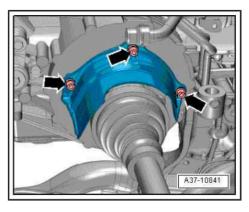


- Remove front wheel (right-side) ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44; Wheels, tyres.
- Remove cover -1- for drive shaft in wheel housing (right-side).



- Remove bolts: arrows-/and/detach/heat/shield/for/drive/shaft (right side) to the o
- Unbolt drive shaft (right-side) from gearbox flange shaft ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Removing and installing drive shaft.







# Caution

Risk of damage to flexible joints in front silencer.

- Do NOT bend the flexible joint in the front silencer more than 10°.
- Loosen and push back clamp -2- and tie up front silencer (right-side).



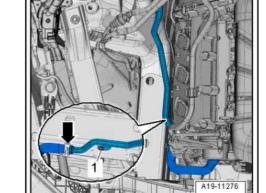
# Note

Disregard -item 1-.

# Vehicles without auxiliary heater:

Unscrew bolts -1 and 2- and place coolant pipe on longitudinal member (right-side) to one side (coolant hoses remain connected).

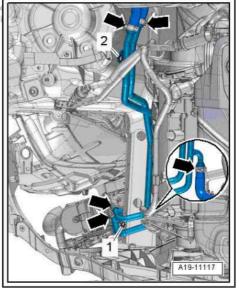




2

Vehicles with auxiliary heaters for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is

- permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liab Loosen nutres becand remove bolting ation in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- Release hose clips -arrows-, disconnect coolant hoses from coolant pipe at longitudinal member (right-side) and detach coolant pipe.



# Continued for all vehicles:

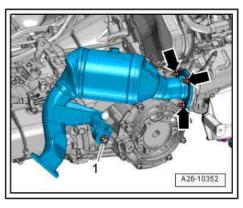
Remove bolt -1- and nuts -arrows- and pull catalytic converter off exhaust manifold.

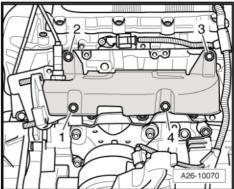


# Note

For illustration purposes, the installation position is shown with the engine removed.

- Remove bolts -1 ... 4- and detach heat shield.





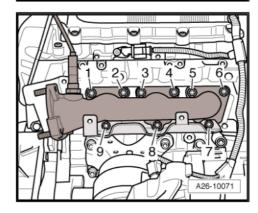
- Remove nuts -7- and -9- and detach bracket for heat shield.
- Remove nuts -1 ... 6- and -8- and detach exhaust manifold. Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



# Note

- Renew gaskets and self-locking nuts.
- ♦ Coat threads of nuts with high-temperature paste; for high temperature paste refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.
- Secure all hose connections with the correct type of hose clips (same as original equipment) ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.



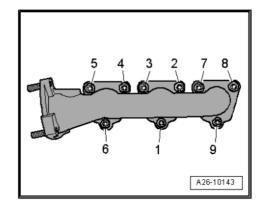


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Fit exhaust manifold with gasket for catalytic converter and tighten nuts
  - ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (right-side) tightening torque and sequence" , page 363 .
- Install catalytic converter (right-side) ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view - silencers", page 333
- Install Lambda probe G39-⇒ "7.2.1 Removing and installing Lambda probe G39", page 320.
- Install air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.

# **Tightening torques**

- ⇒ Fig. ""Exhaust manifold (right-side) tightening torque and sequence", page 363
- ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Drive shaft; Exploded view - drive shaft
- Heat shield ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 40; Subframe; Exploded view - subframe
- ⇒ Running gear, axles, steering; Rep. gr. 44; Wheels, tyres
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# 28 – Ignition system

# Ignition system

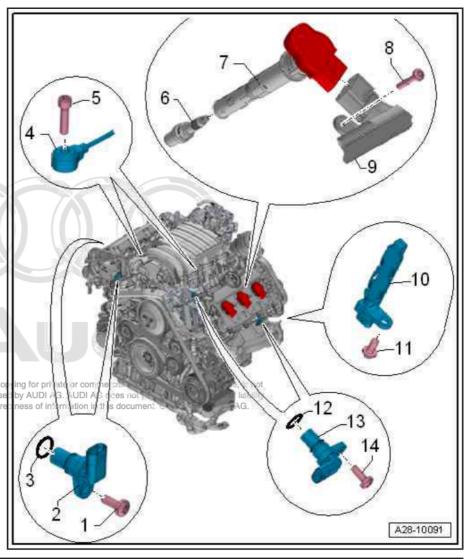
- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view ignition system", page 371
- ⇒ "1.2 Test data, spark plugs", page 374
- ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374
- ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing knock sensor", page 376
- ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380
- ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28", page 381

#### 1.1 Exploded view - ignition system

- ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371
- ⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373

#### Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine 1.1.1

- 1 Bolt
  - □ 9 Nm
- 2 Hall sender
  - Cylinder bank 1 (rightside)
- Inlet side: Hall sender -G40-
- Exhaust side: Hall sender 3 - G300-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380
- 3 O-ring
  - □ Renew
- 4 Knock sensor
  - □ Contact surfaces between knock sensor and cylinder block must be free of corrosion, oil and grease.
- Cylinder bank 1 (right-side): knock sensor 1 - G61-
- Cylinder bank 2 (left-side): knock sensor 2 - G66-
  - Removing and installing ⇒ "1.4 Removing and installing knock sensor", page 376
- 5 Bolt
  - □ 25 Nm



6 - Sp	ark plug
	Remove and install with spark plug socket and extension - 3122 B- ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411
	Change interval ⇒ Maintenance tables
	30 Nm
7 - Ign	ition coil
	Ignition coil 1 with output stage - N70-
	Ignition coil 2 with output stage - N127-
	Ignition coil 3 with output stage - N291-
	Ignition coil 4 with output stage - N292-
	Ignition coil 5 with output stage - N323-
	Ignition coil 6 with output stage - N324-
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374
8 - Bo	lt .
	5 Nm
9 - Ele	ctrical wiring harness
10 - B	olt
	9 Nm
11 - E	ngine speed sender - G28-
	Removing and installing ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28 ", page 381
12 <b>-</b> O	-ring
	Renew
13 - H	all sender
	Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)
♦ Inle	et side: Hall sender 2 - G163-
♦ Exi	naust side: Hall sender 4 - G301-
	Removing and installing <u>⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380</u>
14 - B	olt
	9 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



#### 1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine

# 1 - Bolt

□ 9 Nm

#### 2 - Hall sender

- ☐ Cylinder bank 1 (rightside)
- Inlet side: Hall sender -G40-
- Exhaust side: Hall sender 3 - G300-
- Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380

# 3 - O-ring

□ Renew

# 4 - Knock sensor

- Contact surfaces between knock sensor and cylinder block must be free of corrosion, oil and grease.
- Cylinder bank 1 (rightside): knock sensor 1 -G61-
- Cylinder bank 2 (leftside): knock sensor 2 -G66-
- Removing and installing ⇒ "1.4.3 Removing and installing knock sensors vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 378

# 5 - Bolt

□ 25 Nm

# 6 - Spark plug

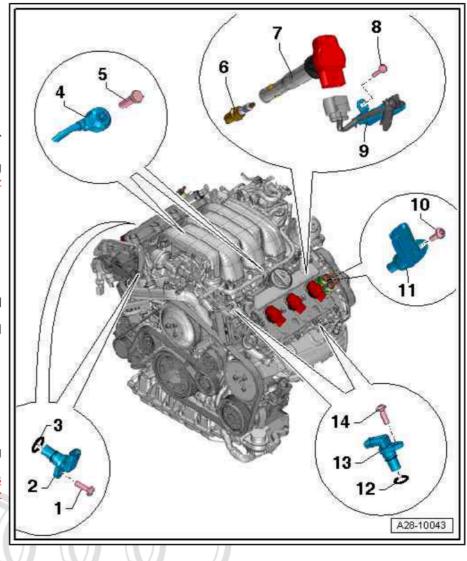
- □ Change interval ⇒ Maintenance tables
- □ Remove and install with spark plug socket and extension 3122 B- ⇒ Maintenance; Booklet 411
- □ 30 Nm

# 7 - Ignition coil

- ☐ Ignition coil 1 with output stage N70-
- ☐ Ignition coil 2 with output stage N127-
- Ignition Could awith output stage DN291DI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
- Ignition coil 4 with output stage of N292 on in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.
- ☐ Ignition coil 5 with output stage N323-
- ☐ Ignition coil 6 with output stage N324-
- □ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages", page 374
- ☐ Use puller T40039- for removal

# 8 - Bolt

□ 5 Nm



9 - Electrical wiring harness	9 - E	lectrical	wiring	harness
-------------------------------	-------	-----------	--------	---------

10 - Bolt

□ 9 Nm

11 - Engine speed sender - G28-

□ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.6 Removing and installing engine speed sender G28", page 381

12 - O-ring

□ Renew

13 - Hall sender

☐ Cylinder bank 2 (left-side)

☐ Inlet side: Hall sender 2 - G163-

☐ Exhaust side: Hall sender 4 - G301-

□ Removing and installing ⇒ "1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders", page 380

14 - Bolt

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

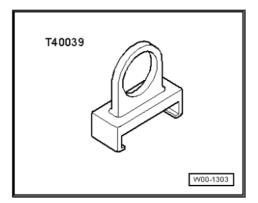
# 1.2 Test data, spark plugs

Engine data		2.5 ltr. / 2.8 ltr. / 4V FSI	
Idling speed		Cannot be adjusted; regulated by idling speed stabilisation	
Ignition timing		Not adjustable (determined by control unit)	
Ignition system		Multi-coil system with 6 ignition coils (output stages integrated) connected directly to spark plugs via spark plug connectors	
Spark plugs	Designations	⇒ Electronic parts catalogue	
	Removing and installing Tightening torque	⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 411	
Firing order		1-4-3-6-2-5	

# 1.3 Removing and installing ignition coils with output stages

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Puller - T40039-



# Removing

Remove engine cover panel
 ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
 page 64



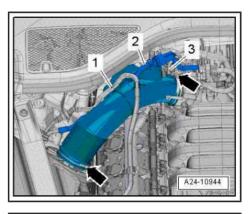
# Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

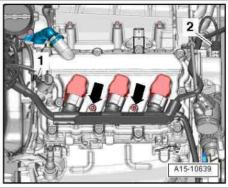
- Only remove air cleaner housing on ignition coil for cylinder 1 ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.
- Move fuel line -1- and line -2- from activated charcoal filter clear at air cleaner housing and air pipe.
- Detach vacuum hose -3- from connection on air pipe.
- Loosen hose clips -arrows- and detach air pipe.
- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and unplug electrical connectors at ignition coils.
- Move electrical wiring harness down slightly.



Note

Disregard items -1 and 2-.





# Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Push coolant expansion tank to one side with coolant hoses -arrows- attached.

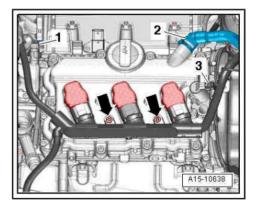


- Unscrew bolts -arrows- and unplug electrical connectors at ignition coils.
- Move electrical wiring harness down slightly.



Note

Disregard -items 1, 2, 3-.



# Both sides (continued):

Pull ignition coils out of spark plug holes using puller -T40039- .

# Installing

- Fit all ignition coils loosely into spark plug holes.
- Align ignition coils with connectors and attach all connectors onto coils simultaneously.
- Push ignition coils evenly onto spark plugs by hand (do NOT attempt to knock in coils with any kind of tool).

The remaining installation steps are carried out in the reverse sequence.

# Tightening torques

- ♦ ± "1.1 Exploded view ignition system", page 371
- ⇒ Fig. ""Installing air pipes and hoses with screw-type clips"", page 285

#### 1.4 Removing and installing knock sensor

⇒ "1.4.1 Removing and installing knock sensor 1 G61 - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 376

⇒ "1.4.2 Removing and installing knock sensor 2 G66 - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 377

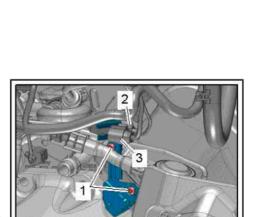
# 1.4.1 Removing and installing knock sensor 1 - G61- - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine

# Removing

- Remove injector on cylinder 2 ⇒ "4.3.1 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 301
- Take electrical connector -3- (cylinder bank 1) out of bracket.
- Detach electrical connector -2- from bracket and unplug.



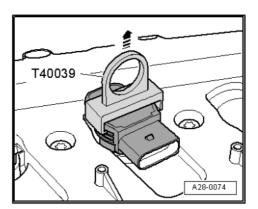
Disregard -item 1-.



A15-10927



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.





Unscrew bolt -1- for knock sensor 1 - G61- and detach knock sensor.



Note

Disregard -item 2-.

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

 Install injector ⇒ "4.3.1 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 301

Tightening torques
Protected by copyright Copyright or private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI.AG does not guarantee or accept any liability.

with respect to the Exploded view in ignition system, we hicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371

# 1.4.2 Removing and installing knock sensor 2 - G66- - vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine

# Removing

- Remove injector on cylinder 5 ⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 Itr. engine", page 305.
- Take electrical connector -2- (cylinder bank 2) for knock sensor 2 - G66- out of bracket and unplug connector.



Note

Disregard items -1 and 3-.

Unscrew bolt -2- for knock sensor 2 - G66- and detach knock sensor.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.

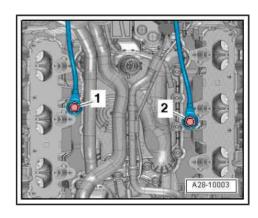
# Installing

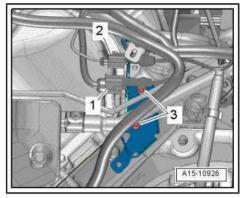
Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:

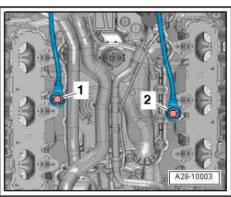
Install injector ⇒ "4.3.2 Removing and installing injectors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 305.

# Tightening torques

◆ ⇒ "1.1.1 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.5 ltr. engine", page 371







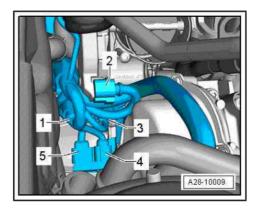
#### 1.4.3 Removing and installing knock sensors - vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine

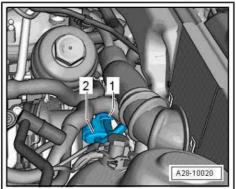
# Electrical connectors

- 1 To injectors on cylinder bank 1
- 2 Throttle valve module J338-
- 3 Knock sensor 1 G61-
- 4 Lambda probe G39-
- 5 Lambda probe after catalytic converter G130-

#### Electrical connectors

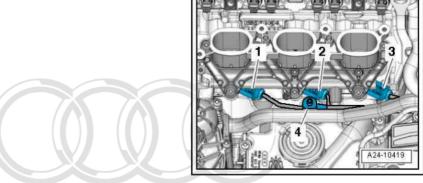
- 1 Knock sensor 2 G66-
- 2 Injectors, cylinder bank 2, and for fuel pressure sender G247-





# Knock sensor for cylinder bank (right-side)

4 - Knock sensor 1 - G61-





Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Knock sensor for cylinder bank (left-side)

5 - Knock sensor 2 - G66-

# Removing



# WARNING

- The fuel system operates under high pressure. The pressure in the high-pressure part of the injection system must be reduced to a residual pressure prior to opening the
  - ⇒ "1.2 Reducing fuel pressure in high-pressure section", page 282 .
- A clean cloth must then be wrapped around the connection and the residual pressure dissipated by carefully loosening the connection.
- ♦ Observe notes on procedure for disconnecting the battery ⇒ Electrical system; Rep. gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and connecting battery .
- Remove intake manifold (top section) ⇒ "3.4 Removing and installing intake manifold (top section)", page 294.
- Remove relevant intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296 .



#### Note

To reach the bolt on knock sensor 1 - G61- -4- you must first remove injector 2. To reach the bolt on knock sensor 2 - G66--4- you must first remove injector 5.

Remove bolt from corresponding knock sensor.

# Installing

Re-install whichever knock sensor was removed.



# Note

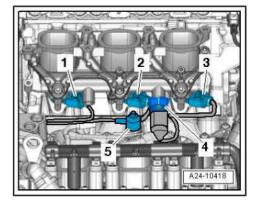
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

The tightening torque influences the function of the knock sensors of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Tightening torque: refer to exploded view of ignition system.
- Install relevant intake manifold (bottom section) with fuel rail ⇒ "3.5 Removing and installing intake manifold (bottom section)", page 296.
- Install intake manifold ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing intake manifold", page 292.

# Tightening torques

⇒ "1.1.2 Exploded view - ignition system, vehicles with 2.8 ltr. engine", page 373



#### 1.5 Removing and installing Hall senders

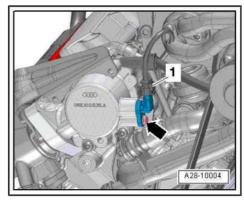
⇒ "1.5.1 Removing and installing Hall senders G40 / G163", page

⇒ "1.5.2 Removing and installing Hall senders G300 / G301 ", page 380

#### 1.5.1 Removing and installing Hall senders -G40- / -G163-

# Removing

- Remove engine cover panel ⇒ "3.1 Removing and installing engine cover panel",
- Unplug electrical connector -1- (cylinder bank 1).
- Unscrew bolt -arrow- and remove Hall sender G40- .



- Unplug electrical connector -1- (cylinder bank 2).
- Remove bolt -arrow- and detach Hall sender 2 G163- .

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

Fit new O-rings.

# Tightening torques

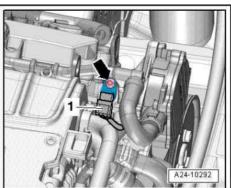
♦ "1.1 Exploded view - ignition system", page 371

#### 1.5.2 Removing and installing Hall senders -G300- / -G301-

# Removing

Cylinder bank 1 (right-side):

Remove air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.



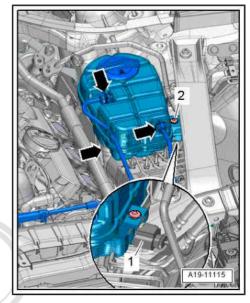


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



# Cylinder bank 2 (left-side):

- Unplug electrical connector -1-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Push coolant expansion tank to one side with coolant hoses -arrows- attached.



# Both sides (continued):

- Unscrew bolt -2- and detach Hall sender.



Note

The illustration shows Hall sender 4 - G301- on cylinder bank 2 (left-side). The other Hall senders are similar to or commercial purposes, in part of

permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ac with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

# Installing

Installation is carried out in reverse order; note the following:



Note

# Fit new O-rings.

Install air cleaner housing ⇒ "2.2 Removing and installing air cleaner housing", page 285.

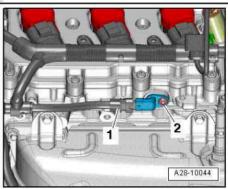
# **Tightening torques**

♦ ± "1.1 Exploded view - ignition system", page 371

#### 1.6 Removing and installing engine speed sender - G28-

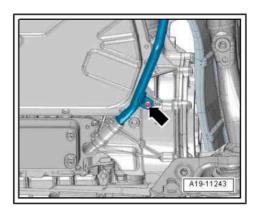
# Removing

Remove noise insulation (rear) ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Removing and installing noise insulation.



# Vehicles with dual clutch gearbox 0B5:

- Remove bolt -arrow- for coolant pipe on gearbox (right-side).



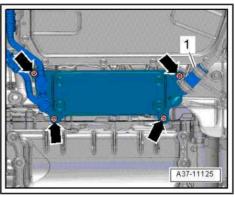
# Vehicles with ATF cooler:

Remove bolts -arrows- and push ATF cooler slightly to one side.



Note

Disregard -item 1-.



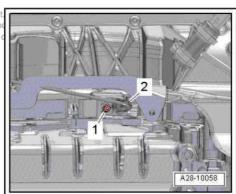
# Continued for all vehicles:

- Unplug electrical connector -2-.
- Unscrew bolt -1- and pull out engine speed sender G28- .

Installation is carried out in reverse sequence.

# Tightening torques

- ⇒ "1.1 Exploded view ignition system", page 371
- ⇒ "3.1 Exploded view coolant pipes", page 236
- $\Rightarrow$  Rep. gr. 34 ; ATF circuit; Exploded view ATF circuit /  $\Rightarrow$  Rep. gr. 37 ; ATF circuit; Exploded view ATF circuit
- ⇒ General body repairs, exterior; Rep. gr. 66; Noise insulation; Exploded view - noise insulation



Protected by copyrigh permitted unless auth

with respect to the

ny liability I AG.